

THE
SCHOOL AND UNIVERSITY
ETON LATIN GRAMMAR,
Explanatory and Critical:
WITH COPIOUS ANNOTATIONS FROM
MADVIG, ZUMPT, ARNOLD, DONALDSON,
AND THE MOST EMINENT LATIN GRAMMARIANS;
COMPRISING ALSO
A NEW AND IMPROVED SYNTAX,
AND THE RULES OF
ALVAREZ' LATIN PROSODY, CORRECTED AND CONSTRUED.

BY

ROSCOE MONGAN, A.B.

EX-CLASSICAL SCHOLAR, TRINITY COLLEGE, DUBLIN, EDITOR OF "THE ALDINE VIRGIL"



LONDON:
SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.
DUBLIN: WILLIAM M^CGEE.

1861.

3052. f. 10.

PREFACE.

Two great objects have been aimed at in the composition of the present work—the production of the Eton Grammar in its ancient simplicity, and its adaptation to the highest standard of modern improvements.

The Eton Grammar dates its origin from the early period of the Eighth Henry's reign, when the famous Dean Colet founded and endowed the School of St. Paul, and compiled for its use the “Rudiments of the Latin Accidence”—thus forming the nucleus of the present Grammar. The very history of this work recalls the time-honored memories of the dead; it was patronized by Wolsey, and the genius of Erasmus shed its lustre on its pages.

This early compilation was brief and simple; it was composed in *English*, and all the examples were translated. With the design of supplying a more complete treatise for advanced students, William Lily (the first Master of St. Paul's School) wrote a Grammar in *Latin*, and Dean Colet and Erasmus assisted him in the task. Both works were now combined into one; but in consequence of being composed of discordant elements, they failed to harmonize.

The Eton editors subsequently introduced various important changes, in order to obviate this inconvenience.

About the period of the Great Revolution of 1688, Bishop Wettenhall altered and improved the compilations of Lily, Colet, and Erasmus. But vast advances have been made both in Grammatical learning, and in the English Language, since the period of the Revolution. The ancient phraseology is far too quaint and obsolete for the present day; it is not easily understood by the young pupil, nor is it adapted for being retained in the memory.

Under these circumstances I have laboriously endeavoured to follow out my original design of producing the Eton Grammar in its ancient simplicity, and adapting it to the highest standard of modern improvements. Mature consideration has convinced me that such a work was really wanted, and I have anxiously endeavoured to supply the deficiency. After a very careful comparison of the Eton Texts, I have adopted, as the basis of this work, the excellent edition published at Eton, in 1758.

I would respectfully observe, that the present edition is not merely an Eton Grammar, enlarged with supplementary notes, selected from various authors. In many particulars it is completely different from its predecessors; every line of the Eton text has been tested and examined, according to the views of the best grammarians; and wherever they are unanimous in recommending a change, the improvement has been introduced into the body of the Grammar.

But even in introducing unquestionable improvements, I have endeavoured to act with extreme caution. Not one solitary change has been made without the sanction of

the very highest authorities, and distinct and specific references are supplied in the notes wherever an alteration occurs.

The very improvements are not merely matters of opinion—they are matters of certainty, in which the most celebrated authorities coincide. In illustration of my meaning, I may mention the omission of the “so-called” Latin Article. Any man would now be ashamed of his scholarship who would unguardedly assert that a Definite Article existed in the Latin Language. The supposition originated in a mistake; the ancient grammarians used the Demonstrative Pronoun *hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, to indicate the Gender of Substantives, and by some oversight of the editors of the Grammar, it was styled the Latin Definite Article. *Arnold*, *Donaldson*, *Madvig*, *Zumpt*, and every other sound grammarian, unanimously condemned this practice; yet it was continued in many grammars, because the editors feared to make any change. Surely, in this particular, reform was really required, and I am much gratified in observing that the so-called Article has been expunged in the edition now used at Eton. *Why should a boy be taught what is wrong, particularly at the commencement of his educational career? Throughout this entire Grammar, Syntax and Prosody, the pupil will, at least, be taught not one single principle which he will afterwards be obliged to unlearn.*

This edition is designed for two classes of learners, and it has therefore been styled explanatory and critical. I have invariably endeavoured to appeal to the understanding of the youthful pupil, and to develop his faculties, by making him clearly comprehend what he learns. The meanings of the various terms, *Inflection*, *Case*, *Declension*, &c.,

and the reasons of the different grammatical rules and principles, are clearly explained in a simple and attractive style, which can be easily understood, and easily remembered. Examination Questions have been appended, not at the end of the book, but immediately after each section, in order to firmly imprint the ideas in the mind, while they are still fresh in the memory. The advanced student will find copious annotations selected from the highest authorities.

A novel feature has been introduced in this edition, by "the Comparative Views of the Latin and English Languages," which have been systematically arranged according to the various Parts of Speech. The Anglo-Saxon, as well as the Latin sources of modern English, have been distinctly traced, and the comparative anatomy of the languages is exhibited in a clear and concise form. In this department I gratefully acknowledge my obligations to Professor Latham.

The Syntax has been most carefully re-modelled and arranged, and to complete the work, I have added the Rules of Alvarez' Latin Prosody, with Dr. Carey's valuable emendations.

I am deeply indebted to many illustrious names for the great improvements which the sanction of their high authority has enabled me to introduce into the Eton Grammar and Syntax. Among these, I may specify Donaldson, Arnold, Dr. Kennedy, Dr. Smith, Professors Key, Andrews and Stoddard, and the Rev. Musgrave Wilkins (Author of the "Latin Prose Composition). I have also made very copious extracts from the works of

Madvig and *Zumpt*, and from the old editions of *Ruddiman* and *Valpy*.¹

I have now only to hope that the well-pruned branches of the parent tree, and the foreign scions grafted on its stem, may plentifully yield the wholesome fruit of sound instruction.

ROSCOE MONGAN.

23, South Frederick-street, Dublin,
October, 1860.

1. I have derived valuable assistance from the Translations of *Zumpt's Grammar*, by Kenrick and Dr. Schmitz, and from the Translation of *Madvig's Grammar*, by the Rev. George Wood, of University College, Oxford.

THE
School and University
ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.

The Latin Letters are thus written :

Capitals.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O,
P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z.

Small, or common.

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r,
s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.

Six of these Letters are Vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y*.
The rest are Consonants.

A *Vowel* is a Letter, which forms by itself a full and perfect sound, as *e*.

A *Consonant* is a Letter, which cannot be perfectly sounded without a Vowel, as *B(e)*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Liquids* and *Double Letters*.

The *Liquids* are *l, m, n, r*. The *Double Letters* are *j, x, z*.

The eight remaining Letters, *b, c, d, f, g, k, q, t*, are called *Mutes*; *k, y, z*, are found only in words originally *Greek*.

A *Syllable* is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

A *Diphthong* is the sound of two Vowels united in one Syllable.

There are Six Diphthongs, *æ*, *æ*, *au*, which are in common use, and *ei*, *eu*, *ui*, which occur only in a few words.

The Diphthongs *æ* and *æ* are generally pronounced as the Vowel *e*, and are often joined and written thus—*æ*, *æ*.

Observations on the Latin Alphabet.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, with the exception of W. The letter W is not essentially a Latin character; it first appears on a coin, A.D. 536, and is used only in modern Latin words.

The Romans wrote in *Capital Letters* (*litteræ unciales*.) The smaller ones (*litteræ cursivæ*) were not in use before A.D. 500. Capital Letters are now used only as *initials*. 1st. In proper names and in adjectives derived from them. 2nd. At the beginning of a sentence. 3rd. At the beginning of a verse. A, E, and O are pure vowels. Donaldson considers I and U to be merely "vocalized consonants." The smaller *y* occurs chiefly in words derived immediately from the Greek, as *Cyrus*, *Syllaba*, etc., and corresponds with the Greek letter Upsilon (*υ*).

E final is never mute in Latin (as it frequently is in English), it always forms a syllable with the consonant which goes before it; as *Ma-re*.

F is considered to be the representative of the Æolic Digamma *Ϝ*.

H has only the force of an aspirate or rough breathing, and, in prosody, it is not considered as an actual letter.

K fell into disuse and C supplied its place. K is retained only in a few words, chiefly in those in which it is followed by *a*, as *Kalendæ*. C is generally pronounced hard, as *Cato*, but it is sounded as S before *e*, *i*, *y* and the diphthongs *æ* and *æ*, as *Cæsar*, *Cyrus*.

Of the Double Letters, J is composed of *ii*; X of *cs* or *gs*; *ds* or *ss*. Words introduced from the Greek, always begin with I as *Iason* (from *Ἰάσων*) not *Jason*.

The Letter Q is the Phœnician Koppa *Ϟ*.

U and V, being written as *V* in Latin MSS., are considered as one letter.

The Mark, Diæresis (¨) denotes that the vowel over which it stands, does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as *ǣr*, the air.

Formerly, three Accents were in use, the Grave, the Acute and the Circumflex. The Grave Accent (˘) was sometimes written over particles to distinguish them from other words containing the same letters, as *quòd*, because, *quod*, which. The Circumflex Accent (ˆ) denotes a contraction, and the vowel over which it stands is always long.

The only mark of punctuation used by the Ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. In writing and printing the Latin language, the English adopt their own punctuation.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

There are eight Parts of Speech, or general classes of Words.

Four of these—The Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun and Verb are *declinable*, that is, they are subject to certain changes in their terminations.

The other Four—The Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition and Interjection are *indeclinable*.

OF NOUNS.

Nouns are of two kinds, Substantives and Adjectives.¹

A Noun Substantive is the *name* of a person, place or thing, as *hōmō*, a man, *ūrbs*, a city, *libē*, a book.²

A Noun Adjective is a word *added* to a Substantive, in order to show its quality, as *bōnus hōmō*, a good man, *pūlchrā ūrbs*, a beautiful city, *ūtīlis libē*, a useful book.

EXPLANATION I.

 The *Explanations* are not intended to be committed to memory.

In Latin, as well as in English, the Substantive declares its own meaning and does not necessarily require an Adjective. We can easily understand what is meant by *homo*, a man, *urbs*, a city, or *liber*, a book; but we cannot understand what is meant by the Adjectives, *bonus*, good, *pulchra*, beautiful, or *utilis*, useful, unless we attach these Adjectives to some Substantive either expressed or understood.

1. *Substantive* is derived from *sub-stat*, because it *stands under*, as it were and supports the *Adjective*, or that word which is (*Adjectus*) *joined to it*.

2. A long syllable is marked by a horizontal line (—) placed above its vowel; a short syllable is marked by a crescent (∪) also placed above its vowel.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

Nouns have two *Numbers* ; the *Singular* and the *Plural*.

The *Singular Number* speaks of one only, as *lāpis*, a stone.

The *Plural Number* speaks of more than one ; as *lāpīdēs*, stones.

Nouns may also be divided into Common and Proper.

Common or General Nouns, are those which may be applied to *all* persons, *all* places, or *all* things belonging to the same class, as *hōmō*, a man, *ūrbis*, a city, *flūmēn*, a river.

Proper Nouns (or proper names),¹ are those which can be applied only to *particular* persons, places, or things, as *Cæsār*, Cæsar, *Londīnium*, London, *Tāmēsis*, the Thames.

CASES OF NOUNS.

A Case of a Noun is a change in its termination, as *Pat-ris*, of a father, *Pat-ri*, to a father, *Pat-re*, by a father².

The Cases show the relation which the Noun bears to other words in the same sentence.

Nouns have Six Cases in each Number—the

1. *Proper* from *proprius peculiar* to, because they *peculiarly* belong only to certain persons, places, or things.

2. The word *Case* literally means "a fall." The old Greek Grammarians wrote the nominative in an *upright* line, and the other *cases* in lines inclined to it at certain angles, so that the forms of the genitive, dative, etc., appear to be *falling*, as it were, from the original word. Hence these forms were called the *oblique cases*.

Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, the Accusative, the Vocative, and the Ablative.

Obs. Nouns have *Six Cases* in each number, because six great general relations are shown by the Nominative, and by the changes of termination.

The Nominative simply declares the *subject* of an assertion, as *pŭĕr scribĭt*, the boy writes. Here *pŭĕr*, the boy, is the *subject*, and the assertion is, that he writes (*scribit*).

Obs. 1. The Nominative answers to the Question *Who* or *What*, as *Who* writes? *Puer, the boy.*

Obs. 2. The Nominative is, strictly speaking, not a genuine *case*, since it is the Noun in its *unaltered form*.

The Genitive Case generally denotes *possession* or *origin*, and those relations which are shown in English by the sign *of*, as *dōctrĭnă măgĭstrĭ*, the learning *of* the master.

Obs. 1. The Genitive answers to the question *Whose?* as *Whose* learning? the learning *of the master* (*magistri*).

Obs. 2. The English Language has two forms of the Genitive or Possessive; the Latin Language has *one* form only; the *master's*, and *of the master*, are both expressed in Latin by the single form, *magistri*.

The Dative Case is generally known by the signs *to* or *for*, as, *dō librŭm măgĭstro*, I give the book *to* the master.

Obs. The Dative answers to the question, *to* or *for* *whom*, as *to* whom do I give the book, *to the master* (*magistro*).

The Accusative Case generally denotes the *object*, or that word which the verb or preposition immediately governs: as *pŭĕr scribĭt ĕpĭstōlam*, the boy writes a letter. Here *ĕpĭstōlam* is the Accusative Case, or object of the verb, *scribit*.

Obs. The Accusative answers to the question *whom* or *what*, as *what* does the boy write? *A letter* (*epistolam*).

The *Vocative Case* is used in addressing persons or things, as *ō māgīstēr*, O master.

The *Ablative Case* is generally known by suitable prepositions expressed or understood; as, *dē māgīstrō*, concerning the master; *cōram māgīstrō*, before the master.

The Prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, and the word *than* after the Comparative Degree, are also signs of the Ablative Case.

THE GENDERS.

Latin Nouns have *Three Genders*; the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

Obs. In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things*, has nothing to do with *sex*.—*Arnold*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN, HIC, HÆC, HOC.

The Latin Language has no article.¹

The *Demonstrative Pronoun*, *Hic*, *Hæc*, *Hoc*, *this*, is sometimes placed before Nouns, to denote their gender; and is thus declined:—

1. *Romani articulos non habent.*—*Priscian*. xi. 1. 2. The Latin Language has no Article.—*Arnold*. There is no Article in the Latin Language: hence the Latin *mensa*, means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.—*Dr. Smith* (*Principia Latina*). Donaldson considers that the absence of an Article in Latin, is a proof of the antiquity of the Language.

All good Latin Grammars now reject the so-called Article. *To teach a boy that Hic, Hæc, Hoc is the Definite Article is both wrong in principle and injurious to the pupil.*

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>Hic,</i>	<i>hec,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	Nom.	<i>Hī,</i>	<i>hæ,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
Gen.	<i>Hūjūs,</i>	<i>hūjūs,</i>	<i>hūjūs,</i>	Gen.	<i>Hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>
Dat.	<i>Huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	Dat.	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>
Acc.	<i>Hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hōc,</i>	Acc.	<i>Hōs,</i>	<i>hās,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
Voc.	<i>Caret.</i>			Voc.	<i>Caret.</i>		
Abl.	<i>Hōc,</i>	<i>hac,</i>	<i>hōc:</i>	Abl.	<i>Hīs,</i>	<i>hīs,</i>	<i>hīs.</i>

Nouns of a Common Gender are those which are Masculine or Feminine according to their application, thus *pārēns*, a parent, is *masculine* if it means *a father*, and *feminine* if it means *a mother*.

Nouns of a Doubtful Gender are those which some Classical Authors consider as *Masculine*, and others as *Feminine*; as *āngŭis*, a snake.

Obs. In English, Nouns of a Common or Doubtful Gender are those which have the same termination for both Masculine and Feminine, or for either, as, *Parent*, *Guardian*, *Cousin*, *Neighbour*, *Friend*, etc.

Epicæne Nouns are those which comprise both Sexes under one gender; thus, *pāssēr*, a sparrow, although Masculine only, is applied to both sexes, and *āquīla*, an eagle, although Feminine only, is also applied to both sexes.

Obs. In English, *Man*, *Horse*, etc., although really of the Masculine Gender, comprise both Sexes. In like manner, *Goose*, *Duck*, although really of the Feminine Gender, comprise both Sexes.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. I.

1. How many "Parts of Speech" are there in Latin? What do you mean by "Parts of Speech?"
2. Enumerate the Parts of Speech, which are "declinable" and those which are "indeclinable." What do you mean by "declinable?"
3. What is a Noun? How are Nouns divided? What is a Noun Substantive? What is a Noun Adjective? What do you understand by "Common Nouns" and "Proper Nouns?"

4. What do you mean by the word "*Case*?" What is the use of Latin Cases? How many Cases are there in the Latin Substantive?
5. Shew by an example that the English Language has *two* forms of the Possessive Case, where the Latin has *one* form only.
6. How many Genders are there in Latin? What Part of Speech is, "*Hic, Hæc, Hoc*?" What great error has been committed in classifying *Hic, Hæc, Hoc*? Has the Latin Language any Article?
7. What do you mean by "Nouns of a Common Gender"—"Nouns of a Doubtful Gender"—and "Epicæne Nouns?"

DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Declension is the change of termination which the Noun undergoes in its different cases.

As there are Five principal methods of forming these changes, the Declensions are divided into Five Classes, which are distinguished by the ending of the Genitive Case Singular.

In all the Declensions, all the Cases of the Plural, and those of the Singular (except the Nominative and Vocative of Masculine and Feminine Nouns, and the Accusative of Neuter Nouns) are formed from the Genitive Case Singular.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

The Genitive Case Singular of the First Declension ends in *æ*, as in the examples.

I.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Mūs- <i>ǎ</i> ,	<i>a song,</i>	N.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>songs,</i>
G.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>of a song,</i>	G.	Mūs- <i>ārum</i> ,	<i>of songs,</i>
D.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>to a song,</i>	D.	Mūs- <i>īs</i> ,	<i>to songs,</i>
A.	Mūs- <i>ām</i> ,	<i>a song,</i>	A.	Mūs- <i>ās</i> ,	<i>a song,</i>
V.	Mūs- <i>ǎ</i> ,	<i>o song,</i>	V.	Mūs- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>o songs,</i>
A.	Mūs- <i>ā</i> ,	<i>from a song.</i>	A.	Mūs- <i>īs</i> ,	<i>from songs.</i>

II.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Mēns- <i>ă</i> ,	<i>a table,</i>	N.	Mēns- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>tables,</i>
G.	Mens- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>of a table,</i>	G.	Mens- <i>ārum</i> ,	<i>of tables,</i>
D.	Mens- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>to a table,</i>	D.	Mens- <i>īs</i> ,	<i>to tables,</i>
A.	Mens- <i>ām</i> ,	<i>a table,</i>	A.	Mens- <i>ās</i> ,	<i>tables,</i>
V.	Mens- <i>ă</i> ,	<i>o table,</i>	V.	Mens- <i>æ</i> ,	<i>o tables,</i>
A.	Mens- <i>ā</i> ,	<i>from a table.</i>	A.	Mens- <i>īs</i> ,	<i>from tables.</i>

III.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Pōrt - <i>ă</i> ,	<i>a gate,¹</i>	N.	Pōrt - <i>æ</i> ,	<i>gates,</i>
G.	— - <i>æ</i> ,	<i>of a gate,</i>	G.	— - <i>ārum</i> ,	<i>of gates,</i>
D.	— - <i>æ</i> ,	<i>to a gate,</i>	D.	— - <i>īs</i> ,	<i>to gates,</i>
A.	— - <i>ām</i> ,	<i>a gate,</i>	A.	— - <i>ās</i> ,	<i>gates,</i>
V.	— - <i>ă</i> ,	<i>o gate,</i>	V.	— - <i>æ</i> ,	<i>gates,</i>
A.	— - <i>ā</i> ,	<i>from a gate.</i>	A.	— - <i>īs</i> ,	<i>from gates.</i>

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Rōt-*ă*, f., a wheel; Insūl-*a*, f., an island; Püell-*a*, f., a girl; Hāst-*ă*, f., a spear; Cāus-*a*, f., a cause; Victōrī-*ă*, f., victory.

I. All originally Latin words of the First Declension end in *ă*, and are of the Feminine Gender, if they are not the names of rivers,² or the appellations of men (as *Scribă*, the clerk, *Nāută*, the sailor, *Aūrīgă*, the charioteer).³

. In order to avoid embarrassing the beginner, the Greek Forms of the Latin Substantives, and other matters more adapted to the advanced student are systematically arranged under the heads, "Latinized Greek Nouns," page 32, and "General Observations on the Five Declensions," page 34.

1. The above Example exhibits the Root and the Case-endings. The Root is that part of a word which generally remains unchanged; the Case-endings are the terminations peculiar to the declension. Here *Port* is the Root; the terminations printed in Italics are the Case-endings.

2. Except *Albula*, *Allia*, *Druentia*, *Garumna*, *Matrona*, *Mosella*.

3. *Madvig*. Ch. iv., Sec. 36.

II. The Feminine Nouns, *fiľiă*, *năťă*, *ăńĩmă*, *sěrvă*, *sőćă*, and *ăřĩna*, make the Datives and Ablatives Plural in *ăbűs*, rather than *is*, in order to distinguish them from the corresponding Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension.¹

Děă, f. a goddess, *műľă*, f. a mule, *ěqűa*, f. a mare, and *ľĩběrtas*, f. liberty, form the Datives and Ablatives Plural in *abus* only.

III. There are no Neuter Nouns in the First Declension.

IV. The Datives and Ablatives Plural are alike in all the Declensions.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

The Genitive Case Singular of the Second Declension ends in *i*; as in the examples:—

I.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Măgíst-ěr,	<i>a master,</i>	N. Măgistr-ĩ,	<i>masters,</i>
G. Măgistr-ĩ,	<i>of a master,</i>	G. Măgistr-őrum,	<i>of masters,</i>
D. Măgistr-ő.	<i>to a master,</i>	D. Măgistr-is,	<i>to masters,</i>
A. Măgistr-um,	<i>a master,</i>	A. Măgistr-ös,	<i>masters,</i>
V. Măgíst-ěr,	<i>o master,</i>	V. Măgistr-ĩ,	<i>o masters,</i>
A. Măgistr-ő,	<i>from a master.</i>	A. Măgistr-is,	<i>from masters.</i>

Obs. Most Substantives of this Declension, ending in *er*, are declined like *Măgister*, omitting *e* in the Genitive, and the Cases

1. The Feminine Nouns of the First Declension, *Fília*, a daughter, *Nata*, a daughter, *Anima*, the soul, *Serva*, a female slave, and *Asina*, a she-ass, form their Datives and Ablatives Plural in *abus* rather than in *is*, in order to distinguish them from their corresponding Masculines of the Second Declension, *Filius*, a son, *Natus*, a son, *Animus*, the mind, *Servus*, a male slave, and *Asinus*, a he-ass, which form their Datives and Ablatives Plural in *is*.

formed from it. Those which retain the *e*, and which are declined like *Pŭēr*, are

Vēspēr, *Gēnēr*, *Armīgēr*,
Adŭltēr, *Sōcēr*, *Signīfēr*.

Lībēr, a book, is declined like *Māgīstēr*. *Lībēr*, Bacchus, and the Plural form, *Līberi*, children, are declined like *Pŭēr*.

II.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Pŭēr</i> ,	<i>the boy</i> ,	N.	<i>Pŭēr-ī</i> ,	<i>the boys</i> ,
G.	<i>Puer-ī</i> ,	<i>of the boy</i> ,	G.	<i>Puer-ōrum</i> ,	<i>of the boys</i> ,
D.	<i>Puer-ō</i> ,	<i>to the boy</i> ,	D.	<i>Puer-īs</i> ,	<i>to the boys</i> ,
A.	<i>Puer-um</i> ,	<i>the boy</i> ,	A.	<i>Puer-ōs</i> ,	<i>the boys</i> ,
V.	<i>Puer</i> ,	<i>o boy</i> ,	V.	<i>Puer-ī</i> ,	<i>o boys</i> ,
A.	<i>Puer-ō</i> ,	<i>from the boy</i> .	A.	<i>Puer-īs</i> ,	<i>from the boys</i> .

Obs. *Vir*, a man, and its compounds are the only words in *ir* in the Second Declension.

III.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Vir</i> ,	<i>the man</i> ,	N.	<i>Vir-ī</i> ,	<i>the men</i> ,
G.	<i>Vir-ī</i> ,	<i>of the man</i> ,	G.	<i>Vir-ōrum</i> ,	<i>of the men</i> ,
D.	<i>Vir-ō</i> .	<i>to the man</i> ,	D.	<i>Vir-īs</i> ,	<i>to the men</i> ,
A.	<i>Vir-um</i> ,	<i>the man</i> ,	A.	<i>Vir-ōs</i> ,	<i>the men</i> ,
V.	<i>Vir</i> ,	<i>o man</i> ,	V.	<i>Vir-ī</i> ,	<i>o men</i> ,
A.	<i>Vir-ō</i> ,	<i>from, with, or by the man.</i>	A.	<i>Vir-īs</i> ,	<i>from, with, or by the men.</i>

I. The Nominative and Vocative of all Nouns are alike, except the Vocative Singular of Nouns in *us* of the Second Declension.

II. When the Nominative Case Singular of the Second Declension ends in *us*, the Vocative ends in *e*, except *Deus*, God, that makes *ô Deus*.

IV.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Dömjn-us,	a lord,	N.	Dömjn-ī,	lords,
G.	Dömjn-ī,	of a lord,	G.	Dömjn-örüm,	of lords,
D.	Dömjn-ō,	to a lord,	D.	Dömjn-īs,	to lords,
A.	Dömjn-üm,	a lord,	A.	Dömjn-ös,	lords,
V.	Dömjn-ě,	o lord,	V.	Dömjn-ī,	o lords,
A.	Dömjn-ō,	by a lord.	A.	Dömjn-īs,	by lords.

III. *Agnūs*, m., a lamb, *lūcūs*, m., a grove, *vūlgūs*, m. and n., the common people, *pōpūlūs*, a poplar, *chōrūs*, m., a choir, *fluvīūs*, m., a river, make the Vocative Singular in *e* or *us*.

IV. Roman Proper Names ending in *īūs*, and also *Fīlīūs*, a son, and *Gēnīūs*, a genius, form the Vocative Singular in *ī*, thus, *Vīrgīlīūs*, Virgil, makes its Vocative, o *Vīrgīl-ī*; *Fīlī-us*, a son, makes o *Fīl-ī*, and *Gēnī-us*, a genius, makes o *Gēn-ī*.

V.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Fīlī-ūs,	a son,	N.	Fīlī-ī,	sons,
G.	Fīlī-ī,	of a son,	G.	Fīlī-örüm,	of sons,
D.	Fīlī-ō	to a son,	D.	Fīlī-īs,	to sons,
A.	Fīlī-üm,	a son,	A.	Fīlī-ös,	sons,
V.	Fīl-ī,	o son,	V.	Fīlī-ī,	o sons,
A.	Fīlī-ō,	by a son.	A.	Fīlī-īs,	by sons,

NEUTER NOUNS.

V. Neuter Nouns are generally of the Second or Third Declensions.

Neuter Nouns have their Nominatives, Accusatives, and Vocatives, the same in both

Numbers respectively, and in the Plural, these Cases all end in *ă*.

VI.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	Regn-um, a kingdom,	N.	Regn-ă, kingdoms,
G.	Regn-ī, of a kingdom,	G.	Regn-ōrum, of kingdoms,
D.	Regn-ō, to a kingdom,	D.	Regn-īs, to kingdoms,
A.	Regn-um, a kingdom,	A.	Regn-ă, kingdoms,
V.	Regn-um, o kingdom,	V.	Regn-ă, kingdoms,
A.	Regn-ō, by a kingdom,	A.	Regn-īs, by kingdoms.

VI. Nouns of the Second Declension in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, and *us*, are masculine; Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the names of trees in *us* are feminine.

Obs. The following words in *us* are Feminine. *Alvus*, the stomach, *Carbāsus*, linen, *Colus*, the distaff (rarely masculine), *Humus*, the ground, *Vannus*, the winnowing shovel.

The following in *us* are Neuter; *Virus*, poison, *Vulgus*, the common people (rarely masculine), and *Pelāgus*, the sea.—*Madvig*.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Masculines.—*Ann-ūs*, a year; *Morb-ūs*, a disease; *Cāmp-ūs*, a plain; *Hort-ūs*, a garden.

Proper Names.—*Antōnī-ūs*, Anthony; *Servī-ūs*, Servius.

Feminines.—*Vānn-ūs*, a winnowing machine; *Fāg-ūs*, a beech tree.

Neuters.—*Bēll-um*, war; *Pōm-um*, fruit; *Lōr-um*, a thong.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH SUBSTANTIVE.

EXPLANATION II.

Let us select the word *Amīc-us*, a friend, and observe the difference of formation in the Latin and English Substantive.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. Amic- <i>us</i> ,	a friend.	N. Amic- <i>i</i> ,	friends.
G. Amic- <i>i</i> ,	a friend's, or, of a friend.	G. Amic- <i>orum</i> ,	of friends.
D. Amic- <i>o</i> ,	for a friend.	D. Amic- <i>is</i> ,	for friends.
A. Amic- <i>um</i> ,	a friend.	A. Amic- <i>os</i> ,	friends.
V. Amic- <i>e</i> ,	o friend.	V. Amic- <i>i</i> ,	o friends.
A. Amic- <i>o</i> ,	from or by a friend.	A. Amic- <i>is</i> ,	from or by friends.

It may be perceived that the Latin Substantive forms its cases by changing its terminations.

The English Substantive employs *Prepositions*, such as *of*, *for*, *from*, *by*, etc., to indicate the relations which it would bear to other words in the same sentence.

The change of termination in the Substantive is termed an *Inflection*.¹

The Cases of the Latin Substantive are formed by Inflection.

No case of the English Substantive is formed by Inflection, except the Genitive Singular terminating with the Apostrophe and *s*.

This inflected English Genitive is derived from the Anglo-Saxon. In the Anglo-Saxon, the Genitive termination of many nouns in the singular number was, *es*, *is* or *ys*, as *Godes*, *Leafes*, *Wordes*, *Mirthis*, *Mannys*, for which we now write, *God's*, *Leaf's*, *Word's*, *Mirth's*, and *Man's*. The Apostrophe indicates the omission of the vowel.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 2.

QUESTIONS ON THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

1. What do you mean by the word "Declension?" How many Declensions are there? Why are they divided into so many classes? How are the different classes of the Declensions distinguished? What is the Case-ending of the Genitive Singular of the *First Declension*?
2. Of what Gender are Nouns of the First Declension, generally? Give instances of Masculine Nouns in this Declension. Are there any Neuter Nouns in the First Declension?
3. What is peculiar about the words, *Filiā*, *Natā*, *Servā*, *Sociā*,

1. From *Inflectere*, to bend in; to bend. The noun was bent, as it were, into a fitness to denote the relation to be expressed.—*Arnold*.

Inflection, in a more general sense, is the manner of changing the endings of words in order to show their relations to other words. The Inflection of Nouns is called, *Declension*; the Inflection of Verbs is termed *Conjugation*.

and *Asinā*? What is peculiar about *Dēā*, *Mūlā*, *Equā*, and *Libērtas*? What cases are always alike in all the Declensions?

4. How is the Second Declension distinguished? What is peculiar about Nouns terminating in *er*? Mention the Nouns declined like "Puer." What is the solitary instance of a termination in *ir* in the Second Declension?
5. When the Nominative ends in *us*, how is the Vocative formed? How is the Vocative formed when the Nominative is a Proper Name ending in *iūs*? Give the Vocatives of *Fīl-iūs* and *Gēn-iūs*. Mention some Nouns which form their Vocatives either in *e* or in *us*.
6. In what Declensions are Neuter Nouns generally found? What Cases of Neuter Nouns are the same in both Numbers? How do those Cases terminate in the Plural? Mention some words of the Second Declension ending in *us*, which are Feminine, and some which are Neuter..
7. How does the Latin Substantive form its Cases? How does the English Substantive indicate the relations which it bears to other words in the same sentence? What do you mean by an *Inflection*? What is the only Case of the English Substantive, which is formed by Inflection? What is the Origin of the English Genitive with the Apostrophe and *s*?

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The Genitive Case Singular of the Third Declension ends in *is*.¹

Parisyllabic² Nouns are those which contain an equal number of syllables in the Nominative and Genitive Case Singular, as *Æd-ēs*, a temple, Genitive, *Æd-is*, of a temple. They are thus declined:—

1. *,* The very limited number of examples in former editions of the Eton Grammar, being generally considered as altogether insufficient to enable a pupil to understand this important declension, more copious model examples, exhibiting each principal variety of development are here introduced into the text, according to the plans adopted by Madvig, Zumpt, and other eminent grammarians.

2. *Parisyllabic*, from *Par*, equal, and *Syllaba*, a syllable. *ImParisyllabic*, from *Impar*, unequal, and *Syllaba*, a syllable.

I.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Nüb-ēs,	a cloud,	N.	Nüb-ēs,	clouds,
G.	Nüb-īs,	of a cloud,	G.	Nüb-ūm,	of clouds,
D.	Nüb-ī,	to a cloud,	D.	Nüb-ībūs,	to clouds,
A.	Nüb-ēm,	a cloud,	A.	Nüb-ēs,	clouds,
V.	Nüb-ēs,	o cloud,	V.	Nüb-ēs,	o clouds,
A.	Nüb-ē,	from a cloud.	A.	Nüb-ibus,	from clouds.

II.

<i>Singular,</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Cīv-īs,	a citizen,	N.	Cīv-ēs,	citizens,
G.	Cīv-īs,	of a citizen,	G.	Cīv-ūm,	of citizens,
D.	Cīv-ī,	to a citizen,	D.	Cīv-ībūs,	to citizens,
A.	Cīv-em,	a citizen,	A.	Cīv-ēs,	citizens,
V.	Cīv-īs,	o citizen,	V.	Cīv-ēs,	o citizens,
A.	Cīv-ē,	from a citizen.	A.	Cīv-ībūs,	from citizens.

Imparisyllabic Nouns are those which contain more syllables in the Genitive Case Singular than in the Nominative, as Lăp-īs, a stone, Genitive, Lăpīd-īs, of a stone. They are thus declined:—

III.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	Lăp-īs,	a stone,	N.	Lăpīd-ēs,	stones,
G.	Lăpīd-īs,	of a stone,	G.	Lăpīd-ūm,	of stones,
D.	Lăpīd-ī,	to a stone,	D.	Lăpīd-ībūs,	to stones,
A.	Lăpīd-ēm,	a stone,	A.	Lăpīd-ēs,	stones,
V.	Lăp-īs,	o stone,	V.	Lăpīd-ēs,	o stones,
A.	Lăpīd-ē,	from a stone.	A.	Lăpīd-ibus,	from stones.

IV.

Singular.

N.	Cöm-ēs,	a companion,
G.	Cömīt-īs,	of a companion,
D.	Cömīt-ī,	to a companion,
A.	Cömīt-em,	a companion,
V.	Cöm-ēs,	o companion,
A.	Cömīt-ě,	from a companion.

Plural.

N.	Cömīt-ēs,	companions,
G.	Cömīt-um,	of companions,
D.	Cömīt-ibūs,	to companions,
A.	Cömīt-ēs,	companions,
V.	Cömīt-ēs,	o companions,
A.	Cömīt-ibus,	from companions.

V.

Singular.

N.	Pärēns,	a parent,
G.	Pärēnt-īs,	of a parent,
D.	Pärēnt-ī,	to a parent,
A.	Pärēnt-ēm,	a parent,
V.	Pärēns,	o parent,
A.	Pärēnt-ě,	by a parent.

Plural.

N.	Pärēnt-ēs,	parents,
G.	Pärēnt-ūm,	of parents,
D.	Pärēnt-ibūs,	to parents,
A.	Pärēnt-ēs,	parents,
V.	Pärēnt-ēs,	o parents,
A.	Pärēnt-ibus,	by parents.

VI.

Singular.

N.	Prīnceps,	a chief,
G.	Prīncip-īs,	of a chief,
D.	Prīncip-ī,	to or for a chief,
A.	Prīncip-em,	a chief,
V.	Prīnceps,	o chief,
A.	Prīncip-ě,	by, with, or from a chief.

Plural.

N.	Prīncip-ēs,	chiefs,
G.	Prīncip-um,	of chiefs,
D.	Prīncip-ibūs,	to or for chiefs,
A.	Prīncip-ēs,	chiefs,
V.	Prīncip-ēs,	o chiefs,
A.	Prīncip-ibus,	by, with or from chiefs.

VII.

Singular.

N.	Dux,	a leader,
G.	Dūc-īs,	of a leader,
D.	Dūc-ī,	to or for a leader.
A.	Dūc-em	a leader,
V.	Dux,	o leader,
A.	Dūc-ě,	by, with, or from a leader.

Plural.

N.	Dūc-ēs,	leaders,
G.	Dūc-um,	of leaders,
D.	Dūc-ibūs,	to or for leaders,
A.	Dūc-ēs,	leaders,
V.	Dūc-ēs.	o leaders,
A.	Dūc-ibus,	by, with, or from leaders.

VIII.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Lex,	<i>a law,</i>	N. Lēg-ēs,	<i>laws,</i>
G. Lēg-īs,	<i>of a law,</i>	G. Lēg-um,	<i>of laws,</i>
D. Lēg-i,	<i>to or for a law,</i>	D. Lēg-ībūs,	<i>to or for laws,</i>
A. Lēg-em,	<i>a law,</i>	A. Lēg-ēs,	<i>laws,</i>
V. Lex,	<i>o law,</i>	V. Lēg-ēs,	<i>o laws,</i>
A. Lēg-ē,	<i>by or from a law.</i>	A. Lēg-ibus,	<i>by or from laws.</i>

The Names of Rivers, Cities, Gods, and Months, ending in *is*, generally form the Accusative Case Singular in *im*, and the Ablative in *i*.

Obs. The following Nouns also form the Accusative Singular in *im*, and the Ablative Singular in *i*.

Vis, rāvis, sitis, būris, tūssis,
And also, *Cūcūmis, āmūssis.*¹

Parisyllabic Nouns, Monosyllables ending in *s* or *x* preceded by a Consonant, and those Nouns which end in *i* in the Ablative Singular, generally form the Genitive Plural in *ium*, instead of *um*.²

NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES.

PLURALS IN *ā*.

I.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Opūs,	<i>a work,</i>	N. Opēr-ā,	<i>works,</i>
G. Opēr-īs,	<i>of a work,</i>	G. Opēr-um,	<i>of works,</i>
D. Opēr-i,	<i>to or for a work,</i>	D. Opēr-ībūs,	<i>to or for works,</i>
A. Opūs,	<i>a work,</i>	A. Opēr-ā,	<i>works,</i>
V. Opūs,	<i>o work,</i>	V. Opēr-ā,	<i>o works,</i>
A. Opēr-ē,	<i>by or from a work,</i>	A. Opēr-ibus,	<i>by or from works</i>

1. *Vis*, force, *ravis*, hoarseness, *sitis*, thirst, *būris*, a plough-tail, *tussis*, a cough, *cucumis*, a cucumber, *amussis*, a ruler (i.e., the instrument).

2. *.* In order to avoid embarrassing the learner, the more abstruse investigation of these Rules has been reserved for the "General Observations on the Declensions," under the head, "Third Declension."

II.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Nōmēn,	<i>a name,</i>	N. Nōmīn-ā,	<i>names,</i>
G. Nōmīn-īs,	<i>of a name,</i>	G. Nōmīn-um,	<i>of names,</i>
D. Nōmīn-ī,	<i>to a name,</i>	D. Nōmīn-ībūs,	<i>to names,</i>
A. Nōmēn,	<i>a name,</i>	A. Nōmīn-ā,	<i>names,</i>
V. Nōmēn,	<i>o name,</i>	V. Nōmīn-ā,	<i>o names,</i>
A. Nōmīn-ē, <i>by, with, or from</i>	<i>a name.</i>	A. Nōmīn-ībūs, <i>by, with, or</i>	<i>from names.</i>

III.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Corpūs,	<i>a body,</i>	N. Corpōr-ā,	<i>bodies,</i>
G. Corpōr-īs,	<i>of a body,</i>	G. Corpōr-um,	<i>of bodies,</i>
D. Corpōr-ī,	<i>to a body,</i>	D. Corpōr-ībūs,	<i>to bodies,</i>
A. Corpūs,	<i>a body,</i>	A. Corpōr-ā,	<i>bodies,</i>
V. Corpūs,	<i>o body.</i>	V. Corpōr-ā,	<i>o bodies,</i>
A. Corpōr-ē, <i>by, with, or from</i>	<i>a body.</i>	A. Corpōr-ībūs, <i>by with, or</i>	<i>from bodies.</i>

IV.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Căpūt,	<i>a head,</i>	N. Căpīt-ā,	<i>heads,</i>
G. Căpīt-īs,	<i>of a head,</i>	G. Căpīt-um,	<i>of heads,</i>
D. Căpīt-ī, <i>to or for a head,</i>		D. Căpīt-ībūs, <i>to or for heads,</i>	
A. Căpūt,	<i>a head,</i>	A. Căpīt-ā,	<i>heads,</i>
V. Căpūt,	<i>o head,</i>	V. Căpīt-ā,	<i>o heads,</i>
A. Căpīt-ē, <i>by, with, or from</i>	<i>a head.</i>	A. Căpīt-ībūs, <i>by, with, or from</i>	<i>heads.</i>

PLURALS IN *ia*.

All Neuter Substantives ending in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, make the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural in *ia* instead of *ā*, and the Genitive Plural in *iūm* instead of *um*, as in the examples.

These Neuters also form the Ablative Case Singular in *ī* rather than in *ě*.

I.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	Măr-ě, the sea,	N.	Măr-ĩa, seas,
G.	Măr-ıs, of the sea,	G.	Măr-ium, of seas,
D.	Măr-ī, to the sea,	D.	Măr-ībūs, to or for seas,
A.	Măr-ě, the sea,	A.	Măr-ĩa, seas,
V.	Măr-ě, o sea,	V.	Măr-ĩa, o seas,
A.	Măr-ī, from the sea.	A.	Măr-ibus, from seas.

II.

Singular.		Plurals.	
N.	Anīmāl, an animal,	N.	Anīmāl-ĩa, animals,
G.	Anīmāl-ıs, of an animal,	G.	Anīmāl-ium, of animals,
D.	Anīmāl-ī, to an animal,	D.	Anīmāl-ībūs, to animals,
A.	Anīmāl, an animal,	A.	Anīmāl-ĩa, animals,
V.	Anīmāl, o animal,	V.	Anīmāl-ĩa, o animals,
A.	Anīmāl-ī, from an animal,	A.	Anīmāl-ibus, from animals

III.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	Calcăr, a spur,	N.	Calcăr-ĩa, spurs,
G.	Calcăr-ıs, of a spur,	G.	Calcăr-ium, of spurs,
D.	Calcăr-ī, to a spur,	D.	Calcăr-ībūs, to spurs,
A.	Calcăr, a spur,	A.	Calcăr-ĩa, spurs,
V.	Calcăr, o spur,	V.	Calcăr-ĩa, o spurs,
A.	Calcăr-ī, with a spur,	A.	Calcăr-ibus, with spurs,

Obs. *Far* (corn) makes *Farra*; *Jubar*, *Hepar*, *Nectar*, have no Plural; *Sal* has no Neuter Plural, but makes *Šales*.—Zumpt.

EXPLANATION III.

The Genitive Case Singular has been selected as the great distinguishing feature of all the Declensions, since it always consists of the stem and the case-ending peculiar to the Declension.

The Stem or Theme of the Substantive is found by casting away the

Case-ending of the Genitive Singular, thus *Milēs*, a soldier, Genitive *Militis*; by casting *is* we obtain the *stem*, *Milit*. The Cases of the Plural are generally formed by adding the Case-endings to the stem. In order to be able to decline a word properly (in the Third Declension in particular), we require to know both the Nominative and Genitive Case Singular.

The *Root* and *Stem* are sometimes the same, but sometimes they are completely different elements of the word.¹

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Masculines.—*Ens-is*, a sword, Gen. *Ens-is*. *Pāter*, a father, Gen. *Pātr-is*. *Milēs*, a soldier, Gen. *Milit-is*. *Hōmō*, a man, Gen. *Hōmīn-is*.

Feminines.—*Virtūs*, virtue, Gen. *Virtūt-is*. *Ars*, art, Gen. *Art-is*. *Civitas*, a state, Gen. *Civitat-is*.

Neuters.—*Littus*, a shore, Gen. *Littor-is*. *Carmen*, a song, Gen. *Carmīn-is*. *Rētē*, a net, Gen. *Rēt-is*.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

The Genitive Case Singular of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, as in the Examples.

1. In every word there is some element, which contains its most general meaning, and is common to all the kindred words containing that meaning. This is called the *Root*. Though sometimes difficult to ascertain with correctness, yet it may often be discovered by a careful comparison of all its existing forms, and by the removal of all the additions it has received from flexion, composition, or euphony. The last letter of the root is called the *Root-character*.

Besides this *root*, common to all words of one kindred, every word has a *Crude-form* or *Stem*, which represents it independently of any relation to other words. (The crude-form and root may coincide, but generally there is some difference between them). Thus *curru* is the crude-form of *currus*, but *curr-* the root, as seen in *curro*. This crude-form or stem is the base of all the inflexions of a word; and its last letter is called the *Stem-character*, and is usually meant when the *character* alone is named. The *Endings* affixed to the crude-form represent its relations to other words in discourse.

—Dr. Kennedy's *Progressive Latin Grammar*, page 129.

I.	
Singular.	Plural.
N. Gräd-ūs, <i>a step,</i>	N. Gräd-ūs, <i>steps,</i>
G. Gräd-ūs, <i>of a step,</i>	G. Gräd-uum, <i>of steps,</i>
D. Gräd-uī, <i>to a step,</i>	D. Gräd-ibus, <i>to steps,</i>
A. Gräd-um, <i>a step,</i>	A. Gräd-ūs, <i>steps,</i>
V. Gräd-ūs, <i>o step.</i>	V. Gräd-ūs, <i>o steps,</i>
A. Gräd-ū <i>from a step,</i>	A. Gräd-ibus, <i>from steps.</i>

II.	
Singular.	Plural.
N. Fruct-ūs, <i>fruit,</i>	N. Fruct-ūs, <i>fruits,</i>
G. Fruct-ūs, <i>of fruit,</i>	G. Fruct-uum, <i>of fruits,</i>
D. Fruct-uī, <i>to fruit,</i>	D. Fruct-ibus, <i>to fruits,</i>
A. Fruct-um, <i>fruit,</i>	A. Fruct-ūs, <i>fruits,</i>
V. Fruct-ūs, <i>o fruit,</i>	V. Fruct-ūs, <i>o fruits.</i>
A. Fruct-ū, <i>with fruit,</i>	A. Fruct-ibus, <i>with fruits.</i>

I. The Fourth Declension is only a particular form of the Third. The termination *us* of the Genitive Case Singular is a contraction for *uis*.

II. Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *us* are generally Masculine.

Obs. The following only are feminines: *acus, domus, manus, porticus, tribus*, and the plurals *idus, iduum*, and *quinguatrus, quingua-truum*. The words *anus, nurus, socrus*, and *quercus* are feminine, on account of their signification.—Zumpt.

NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES.¹

III. The few words in *u* belonging to the Fourth Declension are Neuter without exception.²

1. On the authority of Zumpt, Madvig, Dr. Kennedy, Dr. Smith, and other eminent Grammarians, the Declension of the Neuter Singular in *u* is introduced in full.

The old Note which had been introduced into the Eton Grammar, to the effect, that Neuters of the Fourth Declension had only one Case in the Singular Number, is considered by the above eminent Grammarians to have been a complete error.

2. Zumpt. Section 18.

I.

N. Gën-ū,	a knee,	N. Gën-uă,	knees,
G. Gën-ūs,	of a knee,	G. Gën-uum,	of knees,
D. Gën-ū,	to or for a knee,	D. Gën-ibus,	to or for knees,
A. Gën-ū,	a knee,	A. Gën-uă,	knees,
V. Gën-ū,	o knee,	V. Gën-uă,	o knees,
A. Gën-ū,	by, with, or from a knee,	A. Gën-ibus,	by, with, or from knees.

IV. The Dative and Ablative Plural end in *ibus*; but *lăcūs*, *ăcūs*, *ărcūs*, *quercūs*, *spēcūs*, *ărtūs*, *tribūs*, *părtūs*, and *pēcū*, make *ubus*; *pōrtūs*, and *vērū*, make *ibus* and *ubus*.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Masculines.—*Exercitūs*, an army, *Senātūs*, the senate, *Pōrtūs*, a harbour.

Neuters.—*Cōrnū*, a horn, *Tōnitrū*, thunder.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.¹

The Genitive Case Singular of the Fifth Declension ends in *ei*, as in the example:—

Singular.		Plural.	
N. Di-ēs,	a day,	N. Di-ēs,	days,
G. Di-ei,	of a day,	G. Di-erum,	of days,
D. Di-ei,	to a day,	D. Di-ebus,	to days,
A. Di-em,	a day,	A. Di-ēs,	days,
V. Di-ēs,	o day,	V. Di-ēs,	o days,
A. Di-ē,	by a day,	A. Di-ebus,	by days.

1. I have ventured to expunge "*Facies*," and have introduced "*Dies*" as the Model Example of the Fifth Declension.

It is unquestionably wrong to teach a boy to decline "*Facies*" throughout, in the Plural, since he must afterwards learn that it is defective in that number, and, that of all Nouns of the Fifth Declension, "*Res*" and "*Dies*" alone are complete in the Plural.

I. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dies*, a day, and its compounds *mēridies*, mid-day. In the Singular, *dies* is generally Masculine when it signifies *a day*, and Feminine when it signifies *duration* or *length of time*. The plural of *dies* is always Masculine. *Mēridies* is Masculine only, and does not occur in the Plural.¹

II. Only *rēs* and *dies* are declined in the Plural. *Acies*, *Facies*, *Effigies*, *Spēcies*, and *Spēs*, are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural, but not in the other cases.²

Obs. Cicero condemned even *specierum* and *speciebus*.—Zumpt.

III. The Fifth Declension admits no Neuter Gender.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Act-es, an army; *Glāct-es*, ice, *Spēct-es*, an appearance, *Fāct-es*, a face.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. III.

QUESTIONS ON THE THIRD, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

1. What is the Case-ending of the Genitive Singular of the *Third Declension*? What do you mean by "Parisyllabic Nouns?" What do you mean by "Imparisyllabic Nouns?" Give instances of both.
2. Give the Rule for the formation of the Accusative Singular of the Third Declension in *im*, and the Ablative in *i*. Mention some Nouns which form these Cases similarly.
3. Give the Rule for forming the Genitive Plural in *tum* instead of *um*.

1. Zumpt. Section 19.

2. Madvig. Chap. viii., Sec. 48.

4. Mention some remarkable peculiarities of Neuter Substantives of the Third Declension ending in *e*, *al*, and *ar*. Write down the Ablatives Singular, Nominatives and Genitives Plural of *Mārē*, *Animāl*, and *Cālcār*. What exceptions are to this Rule about Neuters of the Third Declension, ending in *e*, *al*, and *ar*?
5. For what reason is the Genitive Case Singular selected as the great distinguishing feature of all the Declensions? What do you mean by the *Stem*? How is the *Stem* found? Can you explain why it is necessary to ascertain the Genitive Case Singular (in the Third Declension particularly)? Are the *Stem* and the *Root* always the same?
6. What is the Case-ending of the Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declension? For what other termination is the Case-ending of the Genitive Singular of the Fourth Declension a Contraction?
7. "Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *us* are generally Masculine"—Can you mention any exceptions to this Rule? Of what Gender are Nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in *u*? Write out the Declension of *genu*. What erroneous idea used to prevail with regard to Neuters of the Fourth Declension ending in *u*?
8. Can you mention any words of the Fourth Declension that end in *ubus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural, also any words that end in both *ubus* and *ibus*?
9. How is the Fifth Declension distinguished? Of what gender are Nouns of the Fifth Declension? What Nouns of the Fifth Declension are declined throughout in the Singular? Can you mention any peculiarity with regard to "Dies?"

N.B.—It is designed that the Pupil should now pass on to the Adjectives, page 39, omitting the Sections for the present.

SECTION A.

N.B.—It is designed that the Pupil should not enter into the Sections until he has learned the other parts of the Grammar, once at least. However, the teacher can exercise his own discretion.

The Sections are systematically arranged for the purpose of reference.

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

I.

Dömüs, *f. a house* (2 and 4 Declension).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Dömüs	N. Dömüs
G. Dömüs	G. Dömüum, or dömörum
D. Dömüi	D. Dömibüs
A. Dömum	A. Dömös (<i>rarely dömüs</i>)
V. Dömüs	V. Dömüs
A. Dömó	A. Dömibüs

We have also the locative *domi*, at home: These irregularities are generally remembered by the line,

"Tolle *me, mu, mi, mis* si declinare *domus* vis."—Donaldson.

II.

Děüs, *God* (2 Declension).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Deüs	N. Deï, Dii, or Di
G. Deï	G. Deórum, or Deüm
D. Deó	D. Deïs, Diis, or Dis
A. Deum	A. Deös,
V. Deüs	V. Deï, Dii, or Di
A. Deó	A. Deis, Diis, or Dis.

III.

Sënex, *an old man*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. Sënex	N. Sënës
G. Sënis	G. Sënum
D. Sëni	D. Sëñibüs
A. Sënem	A. Sënës
V. Sënex	V. Sënës
A. Sënë	A. Sëñibüs

IV.

Bōs, an ox or cow.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Bōs	N.	Bōvēs
G.	Bōvis	G.	Bōvum, <i>or</i> bōum
D.	Bōvi	D.	Bōbūs, <i>or</i> būbūs
A.	Bōvem	A.	Bōvēs
V.	Bōs	V.	Bōvēs
A.	Bōvē	A.	Bōbūs <i>or</i> būbūs

V.

Vis, f. strength.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	Vis	N.	Virēs
G.	wanting	G.	Virium
D.	wanting	D.	Viribūs
A.	Vim	A.	Virēs
V.	wanting	V.	Virēs
A.	Vi	A.	Viribūs

VI.

Jusjūrandum, n., an oath. (This is properly a combination of two words, *Jus*, 3 Declension, and *Jurandum*, 2 Declension).

Singular.

N.	Jusjūrandum
G.	Jūrisjūrandi
D.	Jurijūrandō
A.	Jusjūrandum
V.	Jusjūrandum
A.	Jūrējūrando.

VII.

Jupiter (the God).

Singular.

N.	Jūpītēr
G.	Jōvis
D.	Jōvi
A.	Jōvem
V.	Jūpītēr
A.	Jōvē.

VIII.

Respublica, f., a commonwealth. (This is properly a combination of two words, *Res*, 5 Declension, and *Publica*, 1 Declension).

Singular.

- N. *Respublicā*
 G. *Rēipublicæ*
 D. *Rēipublicæ*
 A. *Rempublicam*
 V. *Respublicā*
 A. *Rēpublicā.*

Some Substantives, though they have only one form in the Singular, have in the Plural either two forms of different Genders, or one form only, which, however, differs in Gender from the Singular:—

Jocus (a joke), m., plur. *joci*, m., and *joca*, n.

Locus (a place), m., plur. *loca*, n., places, but *loci*, m., passages in books: this distinction, however, is not always observed.

Carbasus (f. linen), plur. *carbasa*, n., sail.

Coelum n. (heaven), plur. *coeli*, m.

Frenum, n. (bit), plur. *freni*, m., and *frena*, n.

Rastrum, n. (a hatchet), plur. *rastri*, m., and *rastra*, n.

Ostrea, f. (oyster), plur. *ostreae*, f., and *ostrea*, n.

Sibilus, m. (a hissing), plur., *sibili*, n., and in poetry *sibila*, f.

Tartarus, m. (the lower world), plur. *tartara*, n.

Balneum n. (bath), plur. *balneae*, f.

Epulum n. (a solemn feast), plur. *epulae*, f., a meal.

Vas n. (a vessel), belongs to the Third Declension, but in the Plural follows the Second Declension, *vasa*, *vasorum*, *vasis*.

Singular.

Aedes, a temple.

Aqua, water.

Auxilium, help.

Bonum, something good.

Carcer, a prison.

Castrum, a fort, [rum.

Comitium, a part of the Roman fo-

Copia, abundance.

Cupedia, daintiness.

Eupulum, a solemn feast.

Facultas, power to do something.

Fortuna, fortune.

Hortus, a garden.

Littera, letter of the alphabet.

Ludus, pastime.

Naris, nostril.

Plural.

Aedes, a house.

Aquae, medicinal springs.

Auxilia, auxiliary troops.

Bona, property. [course.

Carceres, the barriers of a race.

Castra, a camp.

Comitia, assembly of the people.

Copiae, troops.

Cupediae, or *cupedia*, dainties.

Epulae, a feast, a meal.

Facultates, property.

Fortunae, goods of fortune.

Horti et hortuli, pleasure-grounds.

Litterae, an epistle.

Ludi, public games.

Nares, *ium*, nose = *nasus*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Natalis</i> (dies), a birth-day.	<i>Natales</i> , birth, high or low.
[<i>Ops.</i> obsol.] <i>Opis</i> , help.	<i>Opes</i> , power, wealth.
<i>Opera</i> , labour.	<i>Operae</i> , workmen.
<i>Pars</i> , a part.	<i>Partes</i> , (commonly) a party.
<i>Rostrum</i> , a beak, pointed head of a ship.	<i>Rostra</i> , the raised place from which the orators spoke.
<i>Sal</i> , salt.	<i>Sales</i> , witticisms.

—Zumpt.

Some words are declined in two or more ways (are *abundantia*), and of these some vary in Gender as well as in the termination of the Nominative Case. In some instances, however, one form is used more frequently than the other.

Words with various inflections are termed *heteroclita*, those with various genders *heterogenea*.—*Madvig*.

Some are used only in the Ablative, as *pondo*, which is employed either to denote a single pound in weight, as *coronam, auream, libram pondo*, a crown of gold, a pound in weight, or to signify a number of pounds, as *quinguenta pondo data consulibus*, fifty pounds of copper were given to each of the consuls. From the same root we have *sponte*, signifying an impulse or inclination, which is used with possessives; as *mea sponte*, by my own free inclination, of my own accord.—*Donaldson*.

Nouns defective in Case are numerous. Those having only one Case in a number are called Monoptota; those having two, Diptota; three, Triptota, &c.

Many Nouns have only the Nominative and Accusative in one or both Numbers:—

- (a) Greek Neuters in *os* in the Singular and Plural, as *melos*, *melè*.
- (b) *Fas*, *nefas*, *instar*, *nihil*, *necesse*, *opus* (*need*), in Singular only, having no Plural.
- (c) *Rura*, *mella*, *farra*, *tura*, *murmura*, *metus*, *situs*, *spes*, &c., in the Plural, which form the Singular fully.

Observe especially the following Defectives:—

- (*Ambages*, a circuit), has Ablative Singular and full Plural.
- Astus*, *cunning*, Nominative and Ablative Singular, Nominative and Accusative Plural.
- (*Cassis*, a net), Accusative, Ablative Singular (both rare), full Plural.
- (*Compes*, a fetter), Ablative Singular, full Plural.
- (*Daps*, a feast), has all but Nominative Singular, full Plural.
- (*Ditio*, sway), has all but Nominative Singular, no Plural.
- (*Faux*, a jaw), Ablative Singular, full Plural.
- (*Fors*, chance), Nominative, Ablative Singular, no Plural.
- (*Frux*, fruit), has all but Nominative Singular, full Plural.
- Grates*, *thanks*, Nominative, Accusative Plural.

Inquies, *restlessness*, Nominative Singular.

(Juger, *an acre*), Ablative Singular, Dative, Ablative Plural; other forms from *jugurum*, i.

Mane, *morning*, Nominative, Accusative, Ablative Singular, no Plural.

Nemo, *nobody*; Genitive, *nullius*; Dative, *nemini*; Accusative, *neminem*; Ablative, *nullo*.

(Obex, *a bolt*), Ablative Singular, full Plural.

(Ops, *help*), Genitive, Accusative, Ablative Singular, full Plural.

(Prex, *prayer*), Ablative Singular, full Plural.

Repetendæ, sc. *pecuniæ, extortion*, Genitive, Ablative Plural,

(Spons, *inclination*), Ablative Singular.

(Verber, *a stripe*), Genitive, Ablative Singular, full Plural.

Genitive, *vicis*, Accusative, *vicem*, Ablative, *vice*, *change*, no Nominative Singular, full Plural.—*Dr. Kennedy*.

The following Nouns have no Plural :—

Words denoting substances; as *aurum*, gold, *lignum*, wood, *æs*, bronze, *oleum*, oil, *sanguis*, blood: Plurals are sometimes used to denote pieces of the material, as *æra*, bronze statues; *cera*, wax tablets; *ligna*, billets of wood.

Abstract Nouns, as *senectus*, old age; *pietas*, affection or duty; *quies*, rest; *fames*, hunger; *indoles*, disposition.

Words denoting objects, which are necessarily collective or undistributable, as *vulgus*, a crowd; *tellus*, the earth; *supellex*, furniture; *ævum*, time; *ver*, the spring; *vesper*, the evening.—*Donaldson*.

SECTION B.

LATINIZED GREEK NOUNS.

The FIRST DECLENSION includes Greek Words in *ās* or *ēs* Masculine and *ē* Feminine.

Greek Nouns differ from the Latin only in the Singular Number, as in the following examples :—

N.	Æneās	Anchisēs	crambē
G.	Æneæ	Anchisæ	crambē
D.	Æneæ	Anchisæ	crambæ
A.	Æneam or -ān	Anchisem or -ēn	crambēn
V.	Æneā	Anchisā	crambē
A.	Æneā	Anchise	crambē

—*Donaldson*.

Horace generally uses the *Greek forms* (*Circes*, &c.), in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, which approach nearer to the language of common conversation.

The Romans *changed* the Greek final *as* of Names of *Slaves*, *Jews*,

etc., into *a*, as Δημᾱς, *Dama*, Ἀπella, *Apella*: but in the case of *Philosophers* and *Freemen*, they generally retained the Greek *as*, as *Anaxagoras*, *Lysias*.—*King Edward the Sixth's Latin Accidence*.

The greater number of Common Nouns in *e*, especially the names of the arts and sciences in *ce* (e.g. *musicce*, *logice*) have also the purely Latin form, *musica*, *logica*, etc.—*Madvig*.

In the Second Declension, Greek Nouns in *-os*, *on*, retain the *o* in the Nominative and Accusative, as

N.	Delos	colōn	
G.	Deli	coli	
D.	Delo	colo	
A.	Delōn or Delum	colōn	
V.	Dele	colōn	
A.	Delo	colo	—Donaldson.

Greek words in *os* and Neuters in *on*, which make *ov* in the Genitive are commonly Latinized in the Nominative by the terminations *us* and *um*, such as the common Nouns *taurus*, *antrum*, *theatrum*, and the proper names *Homerus*, *Pyrrhus*, *Codrus*; or by the termination *er*, e.g., *Alexander*, *Maeander*, *Teucer*. Others admit of both terminations in the Nominative, as *Delus*, *Paros*, and *Delus*, *Parus*; *Ilion* and *Ilium*. The Genitive Plural in *on* instead of *orum* occurs in the titles of books, such as *Bucolicon*, *Georgicon*.

Greek words in *eus*, such as *Orpheus*, *Idomeneus*, *Phalereus*, were pronounced in Latin sometimes *ēus* as one syllable, and sometimes *ēus*. The best way is to make them follow entirely the second Latin Declension, as *Orphēi*, *Orphēo*, *Orphēum*, with the exception of the Vocative, which (according to the Greek Third Declension) ends in *eu*.—*Zumpt*.

The word *Panthous*, which occurs in Virgil, *Æneid*, ii. 332, is thus declined:—

N.	Panthous,	D.	Panthō,	V.	Panthu,
G.	Panthi,	A.	Panthum,	A.	Pantho.

To the Third Declension belong certain Greek words in *ā*, as *poemā*, Genitive *-ātis*; in *ēr*, as *aēr*, Genitive *-ēris*; in *ās*, as *lampās*, Genitive *-ādis*; in *is*, as *poesis*, Genitive *-ēos*; in *ōs*, as *herōs*, Genitive *-ōos*; in *ō*, as *echō*, Genitive *ūs*, (ἡχώ, Genitive *-ōos*, *-ōūs*) in *ōs*, as *chaōs*, Genitive *-us* (χάος, Genitive *-ōos*, *-ōus*), *mēlōs*, *cētōs*, *ēpōs* (like αἶψος); Plural *Tempe* (like αἶψη; in *ys*, as *chlamys*, Accusative *-yda*), and others.

The Genitive Singular, in Prose, of *poesis* is *poesis*.

The Accusative Singular of *Paris* is *Parim*, *-in*, *ida*, and *-idem*; of *aēr*, is *aērā*, *aërem*; of *æthēr*, is *ætherā*, *æthërem*.

The Ablative Singular of *Chaos* is *Chao*.—Virgil.

The Dative and Ablative Plural of *Poema* is *Poemātis*. The Poets use *Trōdsi*, *Lemnāsi*, from *Troas*, *Lemnias*.

Achilles, *Pericles*, *Ulysses*, etc. (besides their Latin inflexion), make a Genitive Singular in *i* and *ei*; as *ad pedes Achillēi*—Horace. *Pupille Pericli*—Pers. *Remiges Ulyssēi*—Horace. *Regnum Atyatēi*—Horace. Even in Prose, as *Pericli*, *Archimedi*, in Cicero.

The Greek words in *-os*, which increase in *-ivos* or *-eas*, generally end, in Latin, in *o*. *Πλάτων, -ivos*—Plato; *Ἀγαμέμνων, -eas*—*Agamemno*: and so *Macedo*.

Virgil never uses the Genitive, Dative, Accusative, or Ablative of *Dido*, either in the Greek or Latin form.—*King Edward the Sixth's Latin Accidence*.

Words in *s* often form the Vocative, as in Greek, by throwing away *s*; as *Daphnis*, Vocative *Daphnī*; *Atlas*, Vocative *Atla*; *Achilles*, Vocative *Achillē*.

The Greek Neuters Plural *Cete*, *whales*, *Mele*, *melodies*, *Tempe*, are used in Latin.—*Dr. Kennedy*,

SECTION C.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.—In the older poets *ae* of the Genitive Singular is sometimes resolved into *āi*, e.g., *aulāi*, *pictāi*.—Virgil.

At a very early period the Genitive sometimes ended in *as*. Hence the word *familia*, a family, when it is compounded with *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, *filia*, has the Genitive *familias*, e.g., *paterfamilias*, the father of a family (Accusative *patremfamilias*, Genitive *patrisfamilias*, etc.), Plural *patresfamilias*, fathers of families; though we find also *paterfamiliae*, *patresfamiliarum*.

In the antiquated style *um* (as in the Third Declension) is used in the Genitive Plural of some words instead of *arum*, especially *drachnum*, *amphorum* (with the addition of a numeral; *trium amphorum*), for *drachmarum*, *amphorarum*; by the poets also in the words in *gena* and *cōla* (from *gigno*, to beget, to bear, and *colo*, to till), e.g., *terrigena*, earthborn, *coelicola*, an inhabitant of heaven; and in patronymics in *des*, e.g., *Aeneadum* for *Aeneadarum*; so also in some Greek names of peoples, e.g., *Lapithum* for *Lapitharum*.—*Madvig*.

GENDER OF THE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* (being chiefly names of men) are masculine.

Nouns denoting male beings are of course Masculine, though they end in *a*, as *auriga*, coachman; *collēga*, colleague; *nauta*, sailor; *parricida*, parricide; *poëta*, poet; *scriba*, scribe. Names of rivers in *a*, such as *Garumna*, *Trebia*, *Sequana*, *Himera*, and *Hadria* (the Adriatic) are masculine, according to the general rule. The three rivers *Allia*, *Alübla*, and *Matröna*, however, are feminine.—Zumpt.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.—In the Genitive Case Singular, Proper Names of Men and other Substantives in *ius* and *tum* made *i*, not *ii*, during the reign of Augustus; as *Virgilius*, Genitive *Virgili*; *ingenium*, Genitive *ingenti*: but Adjectives made *ii*; as *egregius*, *egregii*.

Scilicet egregii mortalem altique silenti.—Horace.

The four-syllable forms in *ii*, *ingenti*, etc., were first used by the poet Propertius. And the poet Manilius is presumed to be of the Augustan age from his never using them.—King Edward the Sixth's Latin Accidence.

The Genitive Plural of some Substantives is occasionally formed in *um* instead of *orum*, viz., of the appellations of money, weights, and measures, *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *talentum*, *modium*, *medimnum*, from *nummus*, a piece of money, *sestertius*, a sesterce (a certain coin), *denarius* (also a coin), *talentum*, a talent (a sum of money), *modius*, *medimnus*, a bushel (especially after *millia*, e.g., *duo millia nummum*, *decem millia talentum*, but *tantum nummorum*), and of the distributive numerals, e.g., *senum*, from *seni*, six a piece, *deni*, ten a piece, sometimes also that of the cardinal numbers in *centi* (*genti*), e.g., *ducentum pedum*; further, *liberum* from *liberi*, children, *deum* from *deus*, *duumvirum*, *triumvirum* (also *liberorum*, etc.), and finally of some other words in certain combinations, e.g., *praefectus fabrum*, prefect of the workmen (in the army), from *faber*; in the poets also *virum* from *vir*; and of the names of nations, as *Argivum*, *Pelasgum*, for *Argivorum*, *Pelasgorum*—Madvig.

GENDER OF THE NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are Masculine; those in *um* and the Greek Nouns in *ön* are neuter.

Of those in *us*, however, the following are Feminine: the names of plants and precious stones, as well as those of towns, countries, and islands, with a few exceptions. It must be observed, that in many cases where the name of a tree ends in *us* Feminine, there is a form in *um* denoting the fruit of the tree, e.g. *cerasus*, a cherry tree; *cerasum*, a cherry; *malus*, *malum*; *morus*, *morum*; *pirus*, *pirum*; *prunus*, *prunum*; *pomus*, *pomum*; but *ficus* signifies both the tree and the fruit. There are only four other genuine Latin words in *us* which are Feminine, viz., *alvus*, *humus*, *vannus*, and *colus*, which, however, is sometimes declined after the fourth declension, Genitive *üs*. *Pampinus*, a branch of a vine, is rarely Feminine, but commonly Masculine. *Virus* (juice

or poison) and *pelagus* (τὸ πῆλαγος, the sea) are neuter. *Vulgus* (the people) is sometimes masculine, but more frequently neuter.—*Zumpt*.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Words of the Third Declension have various endings in the Nominative, since they either attach the Nominative termination *s* to the theme, or remain without any special termination for that case. The theme, to which the terminations are affixed in the other Cases, ends with a Consonant, but is often modified in the Nominative, so that, before we can decline a word, it is necessary to know, not only the Nominative, but also the theme, from one of the other Cases. We name the Genitive Singular in order to indicate the theme, which is ascertained by taking away the termination *is*, peculiar to the case.

In consequence of this modification of the theme, words, which are different in the other Cases, may have the same termination in the Nominative, e.g., *Caedes*, the death-blow, Genitive *Caedis*; *Miles*, the soldier, Genitive *Militis*; *Interpres*, the interpreter, Genitive *Interprētis*.—*Madvig*.

Many proper names (not Greek) of rivers and towns in *is* which do not increase in the Genitive, make, according to the analogy of the Greek, the Accusative in *im* instead of *em*, e.g. *Albim*, *Athesim*, *Baetim*, *Tiberim*, *Bibilim*, *Hispalim*.

The following Latin common nouns: *amussis*, *ravis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, and *vis*. In the following the termination *em* is less common than *im*: *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *turris*, and especially *securis*.

The Ablative Singular terminates in *i* instead of *e*.

In all words which form their Accusative in *im* instead of *em*, with the exception of those Greek words which make the Genitive in *idis*. Thus we have *poësi*, *Neapoli*, *Tiberi*, and among Latin common nouns not only *ravi*, *tussi*, and *vi*, but *febri*, *pelvi*, *puppi*, *turri*, and *securi*. But *restim* has more commonly *reste*, and *navem* on the contrary more usually *navi* than *nave*. *Clave* and *clavi*, and *semente* and *sementi*, are equally in use.

In neuters in *e*, *al*, and *er*, e. g. *mari*, *vectigālī*, *calcārī*, etc.; but *far*, *farris*, and *baccar*, *jubar*, *hepar*, *nectar*, and *sal*, which have a short *a* in the Genitive, form the Ablative in *e*. Names of towns in *e* always make their Ablative in *e*, as *Praeneste*.

Many words in *is* make the Accusative Singular *im* instead of *em*, viz.:

All Greek nouns which form the Accusative in that language in *ι*: *basim*, *poësim*, *paraphrasim*, *Charybdim*, *Neapolim*, *Persepolim*, *Tanaim*; those which have in Greek both terminations *ι* and *ιδα* (i.e. the barytons in *ις*, Genitive *ιδος*) prefer in Latin the accusative in *im*, e. g. *Memphim*, *Osirim*, *Phalarim*, *Serapim*, *Zeuxim*. But those which in Greek end in *ις*, Genitive *ιδος* (oxytona), have in Greek only *ιδα*, and in Latin only *idem*: e. g. *aegis*, *pyramis*, *tyrannis*, *Aeneis*.—*Zumpt*.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

In the Third Declension the Gender cannot be ascertained from the Nominative alone, but from the Nominative and the theme (as seen in

the other cases) in conjunction. There are, however, some forms of the theme and the Nominative in which no rule could be given for the Gender (especially the Masculine and Feminine), which would not be liable to numerous exceptions.—*Madvig*.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.—The Fourth Declension is a contracted form of the Third: thus, *gradus*, Genitive *gradūs*, *gradūs*; Ablative *gradūē*, *gradū*.

The Dative Singular in the Poets ends sometimes in *ū* (from *ūi*): as *Sese mortali ostendere cætu*—Catull.: *Sicania prætenta sinu*—Virg.: *Parce metu Cytherea*—Virg.: and the Genitive Plural in *ūm*; as *Quæ gratia currām*—Virg.

The Dative Plural of some words of the Fourth Declension ends in *UBUS*; as,

*In UBUS, Quercus, ficus, acus,
(Non IBUS) arcus, verus, lacus,
In UBUS, specus, tribus, artus,
Et ferè portus, pecus, partus.*

— *King Edward the Sixth's Latin Accidence*.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

Words of the Fourth Declension in *us* are Masculine, those in *u* Neuter. But of those in *us* the following are Feminine; the names of trees, as *quercus*, with *acus*, *colus*, *domus*, *manus*, the hand, *penus*, a store of provisions, *porticus*, the portico, *tribus*, the tribe, and the plurals *idus* (*iduum*), the thirteenth or fifteenth day of every month, and *quinquatrus*, a certain feast, in the older language also *specus*; (further, from their signification, *amus*, an old woman, *nurus*, a daughter-in-law, *socrus*, a mother-in-law).—*Madvig*.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.—The Fifth Declension is also a contracted form of the Third: thus, *diēs*, Genitive, *diēis*, by apocope of *s*, *diēi*.

The old Genitive is preserved in the word *Dies-Pater*, for *Diei Pater*.

A shorter form of the Genitive was in *-e*: as *diē*. *Libra diē somnique parēs ubi fecerit horas*—Virgil; *Constantis juvenem fide*—Horace; and is found in the Adverbs (properly Genitive Cases), *quoti-diē*, *postri-diē* (*posterī diei*), *meri-diē* (*meri (miseri) diei*), and others.

Plebei (in the words *Tribuni Plebei*) is the Genitive from *Plebes*.—*King Edward the Sixth's Latin Accidence*.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The words of the Fifth Declension are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, which is masculine and feminine in the singular, and masculine only in the plural. The compound *meridies* is masculine only, but does not occur in the plural.—*Zumpt*.

THE CASE-ENDINGS OF THE DECLENSIONS.

The following are the Case-endings of the Genitive Singular of the Five Declensions :—

1	2	3	4	5
<i>ae</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ei</i>

All Declensions have the following points in common :—

1. In the Second, Third, and Fourth Declensions there are Neuters which have Three Cases alike, viz., Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative.

2. The Vocative is like the Nominative, except in the Singular of the Second Declension, and in some Greek words in the First and Third.

3. Where no exception arises from Neuters, the Accusative Singular ends in *m*.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>am</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i>

4. The Genitive Plural ends in *um*.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>arum</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>um</i>	<i>erum</i>

The Dative Plural is in all Declensions like the Ablative Plural.

1	2	3	4	5
<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus</i> (<i>ubus</i>)	<i>ebus</i>

The following table contains the terminations of all the Five Declensions :—

Singular.

	Neut.		Neut.	
Nom. <i>a</i> (<i>e, as, es</i>)	<i>us, er, um,</i>	<i>a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x,</i>	<i>us, u</i>	<i>es</i>
Gen. <i>ae</i> (<i>es</i>)	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>us</i>	<i>ei</i>
Dat. <i>ae</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>ei</i>
Acc. <i>am</i> (<i>en</i>)	<i>um</i>	<i>em</i> (<i>im</i>)	<i>um, u</i>	<i>em</i>
Voc. like Nom.	<i>e, er, um</i>	like Nom.	like Nom.	like Nom.
Abl. <i>a</i> (<i>e</i>)	<i>o.</i>	<i>e</i> (<i>i</i>)	<i>u</i>	<i>e.</i>

Plural.

	Neut.		Neut.		Neut.
Nom. <i>ae</i>	<i>i, a</i>	<i>es, a</i> (<i>ia</i>)	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Gen. <i>arum</i>	<i>orum</i>	<i>um</i> (<i>ium</i>)	<i>um</i>	<i>erum.</i>	
Dat. <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus</i> (<i>ubus</i>)	<i>ebus.</i>	
Acc. <i>as</i>	<i>os, a</i>	<i>es, a</i> (<i>ia</i>)	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Voc. <i>ae</i>	<i>i, a</i>	<i>es, a</i> (<i>ia</i>)	<i>us, ua</i>	<i>es.</i>	
Abl. <i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>ibus</i> (<i>ubus</i>)	<i>ebus.</i>	

—Zumpt.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives are declined in three ways: firstly, with three terminations, as *bŏn-ŭs*, *bŏn-ă*, *bŏn-um*, good; secondly, with two terminations, as *trĭst-ĭs*, *trĭst-ĕ*, sad; thirdly with one termination, as *fĕl-ix*, happy.

When there are three terminations, the first is Masculine, the second Feminine, and the third Neuter. When there are two terminations the first is Masculine and Feminine, and the second Neuter. When there is one termination only, it is of all genders.¹

Most Adjectives of three terminations are declined in the Masculine and Neuter Genders, like Substantives of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Substantives of the First Declension, as in the examples.²

ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

I.

Bŏn-ŭs, *bŏn-ă*, *bŏn-um*, good.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>Bŏn-ŭs</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ă</i> ,	<i>bŏn-um</i> ,
G.	<i>Bŏn-ĭ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-æ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ĭ</i> ,
D.	<i>Bŏn-ŏ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-æ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ŏ</i> ,
A.	<i>Bŏn-um</i> ,	<i>bŏn-am</i> ,	<i>bŏn-um</i> ,
V.	<i>Bŏn-ĕ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ă</i> ,	<i>bŏn-um</i> ,
A.	<i>Bŏn-ŏ</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ă</i> ,	<i>bŏn-ŏ</i> .

1. Adjectives, as expressing not things, but their qualities, cannot, in strict propriety, have any gender; but they are said to be Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter, merely because they have a Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter termination, in order to make them agree in Syntax, with Masculine, Feminine, or Neuter Substantives.

2. Adjectives with three endings are declined in the Masculine and Neuter, like Nouns of the Second Declension: as *bonus* like *dominus*; *tener* like *puer*, and *bonum* and *tenerum* like *regnum*: and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension; as *bona* and *tenera* like *musa*.

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Bön- <i>i</i> ,	bön- <i>æ</i> ,	bön- <i>ä</i> ,
G.	Bön- <i>orum</i> ,	bön- <i>arum</i> ,	bön- <i>orum</i> ,
D.	Bön- <i>is</i> ,	bön- <i>is</i> ,	bön- <i>is</i> ,
A.	Bön- <i>os</i> ,	bön- <i>as</i> ,	bön- <i>ä</i>
V.	Bön- <i>i</i> ,	bön- <i>æ</i> ,	bön- <i>ä</i> ,
A.	Bön- <i>is</i> .	bön- <i>is</i> .	bön- <i>is</i> .

All Participles in *us* are declined like *bonus*.

II.

Tën-*ēr*, Tën-*ēră*, Tën-*ēr*um, *tender*.

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Tënēr,	tënēr-ä,	tënēr-um,
G.	Tënēr-ī,	tënēr-æ,	tënēr-ī,
D.	Tënēr-ō,	tënēr-æ,	tënēr-ō,
A.	Tënēr-um,	tënēr-am,	tënēr-um,
V.	Tënēr,	tënēr-ä,	tënēr-um,
A.	Tënēr-ō.	tënēr-ä.	tënēr-ō.

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	* Fem.	Neut.
N.	Tënër-ī,	tënër-æ,	tënër-ä,
G.	Tënër-ōrum,	tënër-ārum,	tënër-ōrum,
D.	Tënër-is,	tënër-is,	tënër-is,
A.	Tënër-ōs,	tënër-ās,	tënër-ä.
V.	Tënër-ī,	tënër-æ,	tënër-ä,
A.	Tënër-is.	tënër-is.	tënēr-is.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Lōngūs, long; *pārcūs*, sparing; *āltūs*, high; *cāūtūs*, cautious; *aridūs*, dry, declined like *bönūs*,

Miser, miserable; *libēr*, free; *aspēr*, rough; *prōspēr*, prosperous, and the compounds of *fērō* and *gērō*, as *aurifēr*, *belligēr*, declined like *tënēr*.

Most of the Adjectives ending in *er*, lose *e* in declining, as *āt-er*, *ātr-a*, *ātr-um* (not *ātēr-a*, *ātēr-um*).¹

III.

At-ēr, *ātr-ǎ*, *ātr-um*, *black*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>Atēr</i> ,	<i>ātr-ǎ</i> ,	<i>ātr-um</i> ,
G.	<i>Atr-ī</i> ,	<i>ātr-æ</i> ,	<i>ātr-ī</i> ,
D.	<i>Atr-ō</i> ,	<i>ātr-ō</i> ,	<i>ātr-ō</i> ,
A.	<i>Atr-um</i> ,	<i>ātr-am</i> ,	<i>ātr-um</i> ,
V.	<i>Atēr</i> ,	<i>ātr-ǎ</i> ,	<i>ātr-um</i> ,
A.	<i>Atr-ō</i> ,	<i>ātr-a</i> ,	<i>ātr-ō</i> ,

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>Atr-ī</i> ,	<i>ātr-æ</i> ,	<i>ātr-ǎ</i> ,
G.	<i>Atr-ōrum</i> ,	<i>ātr-ārum</i> ,	<i>ātr-ōrum</i> ,
D.	<i>Atr-īs</i> ,	<i>ātr-īs</i> ,	<i>ātr-īs</i> ,
A.	<i>Atr-ōs</i> ,	<i>ātr-ās</i> ,	<i>ātr-ǎ</i> ,
V.	<i>Atr-ī</i> ,	<i>ātr-æ</i> ,	<i>ātr-ǎ</i>
A.	<i>Atr-īs</i> ,	<i>ātr-īs</i> ,	<i>ātr-īs</i> .

Obs. *Dexter*, right, has *dextrā*, *dextrum* or *dextērā*, *dextērūm*.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Intēgēr, entire; *Pūlchēr*, fair; *Sācēr*, sacred; *Crēbēr*, frequent, declined like *Ater*.

1. For further observations on the Adjectives, see *Section D*, page 52.

Unŭs, one, *sōlŭs*, alone, *tōtŭs*, the whole, *nŭl-lŭs*, none, *āltĕr*, the other, *ŭtĕr*, whether of the two, and *nĕutĕr*, neither, make the Genitive Singular in *ius*, and the Dative in *i*, as in example :—

IV.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Un- <i>ŭs</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ă</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ŭm</i> ,
G.	Un- <i>iŭs</i> ,	ŭn- <i>iŭs</i> ,	ŭn- <i>iŭs</i> ,
D.	Un- <i>i</i> ,	ŭn- <i>i</i> ,	ŭn- <i>i</i> ,
A.	Un- <i>um</i> ,	ŭn- <i>am</i> ,	ŭn- <i>um</i> ,
V.	Un- <i>ĕ</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ă</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ŭm</i> ,
A.	Un- <i>ō</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ā</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ō</i> ,

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Un- <i>i</i> ,	ŭn- <i>æ</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ă</i> ,
G.	Un- <i>ōrum</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ārum</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ōrum</i> ,
D.	Un- <i>is</i> ,	ŭn- <i>is</i> ,	ŭn- <i>is</i> ,
A.	Un- <i>ōs</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ās</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ă</i> ,
V.	Un- <i>i</i> ,	ŭn- <i>æ</i> ,	ŭn- <i>ă</i> .
A.	Un- <i>is</i> ,	ŭn- <i>is</i> ,	ŭn- <i>is</i> ,

Unŭs has no Plural Number, unless it is joined to a Noun that has no Singular Number, as *ŭnă lĭtĕră*, one letter, *ŭnă mænĭă*, one wall.

Obs. *Unus*, has also a Plural *uni*, *unae*, *una*, in the signification alone, of one kind, with Plural Substantives, as *Uni Suevi*, the Suevi alone; *unis moribus vivere*, Cic. pro Flacc. 26, to live with manners unchanged. *Uni—alteri*, the one party.—*Madvig*.

Alŭs, another, makes the Genitive *ālŭs*, the Dative *alii*, and the Neuter Singular *ālŭd*, and it wants the Vocative; as in example:—

V.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Al- <i>ŭs</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭā</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭd</i> ,
G.	Al- <i>ŭs</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭs</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭs</i> ,
D.	Al- <i>ŭi</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭi</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭi</i> ,
A.	Al- <i>ŭm</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭam</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭd</i> ,
V.	<i>caret</i> ,		
A.	Al- <i>ŭō</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭa</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭō</i> .

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Al- <i>ŭi</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭæ</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭā</i> ,
G.	Al- <i>ŭorum</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭārum</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭorum</i> ,
D.	Al- <i>ŭis</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭis</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭis</i> ,
A.	Al- <i>ŭōs</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭās</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭā</i> ,
V.	<i>carēt</i> ,	<i>caret</i> ,	<i>caret</i> ,
A.	Al- <i>ŭis</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭis</i> ,	āl- <i>ŭis</i> ,

Obs. The Genitive *alius* is a contraction for *alius*.

ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS.

Adjectives of two terminations are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension.

I.

Trist-*ŭs*, trist-*ĕ*, *sad*.

Singular.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. Trist- <i>ŭs</i>	trist- <i>ĕ</i>	N. Trist- <i>ēs</i>	trist- <i>ŭā</i>
G. Trist- <i>ŭs</i>		G. Trist- <i>ŭm</i>	
D. Trist- <i>ī</i>		D. Trist- <i>ībŭs</i>	
A. Trist- <i>em</i>	trist- <i>ĕ</i>	A. Trist- <i>ēs</i>	trist- <i>ŭā</i>
V. Trist- <i>ŭs</i>	trist- <i>ĕ</i>	V. Trist- <i>ēs</i>	trist- <i>ŭā</i>
A. Trist- <i>ī</i>		A. Trist- <i>ībŭs</i>	

II.

Mělī-ōr, mēlī-ūs, *better*.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.	
N. Mělī-ōr	mēlī-ūs		N. Mělī-ōrēs	mēlī-ōrā	
G. Mělī-ōrīs			G. Mělī-ōrūm		
D. Mělī-ōrī			D. Mělī-ōrībūs		
A. Mělī-ōrēm	mēlī-ūs		A. Mělī-ōrēs	mēlī-ōrā	
V. Mělī-ōr	mēlī-ūs		V. Mělī-ōrēs	mēlī-ōrā	
A. Mělī-ōrē	vel mēlī-ōrī.		A. Mělī-ōrībūs.		

All comparatives, except *Plus*, more, are declined like *Mělī-ōr*.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Omnīs, all; *hūmīlīs*, low; *frāgīlīs*, brittle; *cōmmūnīs*, common, declined like *trīstīs*. *Altīōr*, higher, *brēvīōr*, shorter; *dulcīōr*, sweeter, declined like *mělīōr*.

Adjectives of One Termination are declined like Substantives of the Third Declension.

I.

Fēl-īx, *fortunate*.

<i>Singular,</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M. and F.	N.		M. and F.	N.	
N. Fēl-īx			N. Fēl-īcēs	fēl-īcīā	
G. Fēl-īcīs			G. Fēl-īcīūm		
D. Fēl-īcī			D. Fēl-īcībūs		
A. Fēl-īcēm	fēl-īx		A. Fēl-īcēs	fēl-īcīā	
V. Fēl-īx			V. Fēl-īcēs	fēl-īcīā	
A. Fēl-īcē	vel fēl-īcī		A. Fēl-īcībūs.		

II.

Prūdēns, *prudent*.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. Prūdēns		N. Prūdēnt-ēs	Prūdēnt-iā
G. Prūdēnt-īs		G. Prūdēnt-iūm	
D. Prūdēnt-i		D. Prūdēnt-ibūs	
A. Prūdēnt-ēm	Prūdēns	A. Prūdēnt-ēs	Prūdēnt-iā
V. Prūdēns		V. Prūdēnt-ēs	Prūdēnt-iā
A. Prūdēnt-e vel Prūdēnt-i		A. Prūdēnt-ibūs	

All Present Participles are declined like *Prūdēns*.

EXAMPLES FOR EXERCISE.

Victrix, victorious, Genitive *victricis*; *sūplēx*, suppliant, Genitive *sūplīcis*, declined like *Fēlix*. *Ingēns*, huge; *Præsēns*, present, declined like *Prūdēns*.

Ambō, both, wants the Singular Number, and is thus declined in the Plural:—

<i>Plural.</i>			
N. Amb-ō	āmb-æ,	āmb-ō,	<i>both</i>
G. Amb-ōrūm,	āmb-ārūm,	āmb-ōrūm,	<i>of both</i>
D. Amb-ōbūs,	āmb-ābus,	āmb-ōbūs,	<i>to both</i>
A. Amb-ōs,	āmb-ās,	āmb-ō,	<i>both</i>
V. Amb-ō,	āmb-æ,	āmb-ō	<i>both</i>
A. Amb-ōbūs,	āmb-ābūs,	āmb-ōbūs,	<i>with both</i>

Dūo, two, *trēs*, and *milliā*, thousands, are also declined as follows:—

M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
N. Dū-ō	dū-æ	dū-ō	Trēs	triā	Milliā
G. Dū-ōrum	dū-ārum	dū-ōrum	Triūm		Milliūm
D. Dū-ōbus	dū-ābus	dū-ōbus	Tribus		Millibus
A. Dū-ōs	dū-ās	dū-ō	Trēs or trīs	triā	Milliā
A. Dū-ōbus	dū-ābus,	dū-ōbus	Tribus		Millibus

Millē is indeclinable in the Singular.

The Cardinal Numbers from *quattuor*, *four*, to *centum*, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, *ae*, *ā*, two hundred, and subsequent hundreds, are declined regularly.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 4.

1. What are the three principal methods of declining Latin Adjectives? What declensions of Substantives do Adjectives of three terminations generally follow?
2. According to what model are all Participles, terminating in *us* declined? Have Adjectives, strictly speaking, any gender? Why are Adjectives declined, as Masculine, Feminine, or, Neuter?
3. Can you mention any peculiarities about Adjectives ending in *er*? What is remarkable about the Declension of *Unus*, *Solus*, *Totus*, *Nūllus*, *Alīter*, *Utēr*, and *Neutēr*? What is remarkable about the Declension of *Alīus*?
4. What Declension of Substantives do Adjectives of two terminations generally follow? According to what model are all Comparatives (except *Plus*) declined?
5. What Declension of Substantives do Adjectives of One Termination generally follow? According to what model are all Present Participles declined?
6. What is remarkable about the Declension of *Ambō*? Write down the Declensions of *Trēs* and *Milliā*. Is *Millē* declinable in the Singular? What Cardinal Numbers are indeclinable? How are *Dūcentī*, and the following Hundreds declined?

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

I. The Positive Degree is the Adjective in its simple form, without reference to increase or diminution, as *dōctŭs*, learned, *brěvĭs*, short.¹

The changing of the Adjective from the positive to the other forms is called its comparison.

There are two Degrees of Comparison, the Comparative and the Superlative.²

II. The Comparative Degree increases or lessens the signification, as *doctĭor*, more learned, *brěvĭor*, shorter, or more short.

III. The Superlative Degree increases or diminishes the signification or comparison to the greatest extent, as *doctĭssĭmus*, most learned, or very learned; *brevissĭmus* shortest, most short, or very short.

IV. The Comparative Degree is formed from the first case of the positive that ends in *i*, by adding to it *or* in the Masculine and Feminine Genders, and *us* in the neuter: thus from *Doctŭs*, Genitive *doctĭ*, are formed *doctĭor* and *doctĭus*, more learned: from *Brěvĭs*, Dative *brěvĭ*, are formed *brěvĭor* and *brěvĭus*, shorter, or more short.

1. *Positivus*, placed, put; because the property is simply put down without any comparison made with other objects.—*Arnold*.

2. *I have ventured to differ from the Eton text in accordance with the opinion of the most eminent grammarians and the following excellent authority:—*"Adjectives have two forms of comparison. One is used when, in a comparison of two objects, a property is attributed to one in a higher degree than to the other (or than to the same at another time), and is called *gradus comparativus*, e. g., *vir probior*, a more upright man. The other form is employed when a property is attributed to an object in the highest degree, and is named *gradus superlativus*, e. g., *vir probissimus*, the most upright man."—*Madvig*, Chap. x., Sec. 62.

V. The Superlative is also formed from the first case of the Positive that ends in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*: thus from the Genitive *doctī*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned; from the Dative *brēvī*, is formed *brevissimus*, shortest, or most short.

Obs. The first case of the Positive that ends in *i* is, in other words, the *Stem of the Adjective*, therefore the Rule might be expressed thus: "The Comparative is formed by adding *or* and *us* to the Stem of the Adjective; the Superlative is formed by adding *ssimus* to the Stem of the Adjective."

Obs. The Genitive Singular is the First Case of the Positive that ends in *i*, in Adjectives of Three Terminations. The Dative Singular is the First Case of the Positive that ends in *i* in Adjectives of One or Two Terminations.

REGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Dūlc- <i>is</i> ,	<i>sweet,</i>	dūlc- <i>īōr</i> ,	dūlc- <i>issimūs</i> .
Alt- <i>ūs</i> ,	<i>high,</i>	alt- <i>īōr</i> ,	alt- <i>issimūs</i> .
Lēv- <i>is</i> ,	<i>light,</i>	lēv- <i>īōr</i> ,	lēv- <i>issimūs</i> .
Fēlix,	<i>fortunate,</i>	fēlic- <i>īōr</i> ,	fēlic- <i>issimūs</i> .
Prūdēns,	<i>prudent,</i>	prūdēt- <i>īōr</i> ,	prūdēt- <i>issimūs</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

I. Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative in *rīmūs*: as,

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Līber,	<i>free,</i>	lībēr- <i>īōr</i> ,	lībēr- <i>rīmūs</i> .
Pūlcher,	<i>beautiful,</i>	pulchr- <i>īōr</i> ,	pulcher- <i>rīmūs</i> .
Acer,	<i>sharp,</i>	ācr- <i>īōr</i> ,	ācer- <i>rīmūs</i> .
Cēler,	<i>swift,</i>	cēlēr- <i>īōr</i> ,	cēler- <i>rīmūs</i> .

Obs. Vētus (Genitive vētēr-*is*), *old*, has a Superlative, vētēr-*imūs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *lis* form their Superlative in *līmūs*:—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Făcīlis, <i>easy,</i>	făcīl-īōr,	făcīl-līmūs.
Diffīcīlis, <i>difficult,</i>	diffīcīl-īōr,	diffīcīl-līmūs.
Sīmīlis, <i>like,</i>	sīmīl-īōr,	sīmīl-līmūs.
Dissīmīlis, <i>unlike,</i>	dissīmīl-īōr,	dissīmīl-līmūs.
Grăcīlis, <i>thin,</i>	grăcīl-īōr,	grăcīl-līmūs.
Hūmīlis, <i>low,</i>	hūmīl-īōr,	hūmīl-līmūs.

III. Adjectives ending in -dīcūs, -fīcūs, -vōlūs, form their Comparatives and Superlatives from -dīcēns, -fīcēns, vōlēns: as

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bēnēfīcūs, <i>beneficent,</i>	bēnēfīcēntīōr,	bēnēfīcēntissīmūs.
Mālēdīcūs, <i>slandorous,</i>	mālēdīcēntīōr,	mālēdīcēntissīmūs.
Bēnēvōlūs, <i>benevolent,</i>	bēnēvōlēntīōr,	bēnēvōlēntissīmūs.

IV. If the positive has a vowel before *us*, the Comparative and Superlative are formed by prefixing the Adverbs māgīs, *more*, mākīmē, *most*, to the Positive: as ārdū-ūs, *steep*, māgīs ārdūūs, *more steep*, mākīmē ārdūūs, *most steep*.

Adjectives ending in *quus* are compared according to the general rule: as āntīquūs, *ancient*, āntīquīōr, āntīquīssīmūs.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bōnūs, <i>good,</i>	mēlīōr,	ōptīmus.
Mālūs, <i>bad,</i>	pējōr,	pēssīmūs.
Māgnūs, <i>great,</i>	mājōr,	mākīmūs.
Pārvūs, <i>small,</i>	mīnōr,	mīnīmūs.
Mūltūs, <i>much,</i>	(plūs),	plūrīmūs.
Jūvēnīs, <i>young,</i>	jūnīōr,	(nātū mīnīmūs).
Sēnēx, <i>old,</i>	sēnīōr,	(nātū mākīmūs).

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Dīvēs, <i>rich,</i>	divītīōr or dītīōr,	divītissīmus or dītissī-
Nēquam, <i>wicked,</i>	nēquīōr,	nēquissīmus. [mūs.
Extērūs, <i>outward,</i>	extēriōr,	extēmūs and extīmūs.
Infērūs, <i>low,</i>	infēriōr,	infīmūs and imūs.
Sūperūs, <i>high,</i>	sūpēriōr,	suprēmūs and sūmmūs.
Pōstērūs, <i>hindward,</i>	pōstēriōr,	pōstrēmūs and pōstūmūs

Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions.

Prōpē, <i>near,</i>	prōpiōr,	prōximūs.
Ultrā, <i>beyond,</i>	ultēriōr,	ultīmūs.
Citrā, <i>this side of,</i>	cīteriōr,	cītīmūs.
Intrā, <i>within,</i>	interiōr,	intīmūs.

Adverbs are generally compared in *-ius* and *e*; as¹

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Dignē, <i>worthily,</i>	dignīūs,	dignissīmē.
Brēvītēr, <i>briefly,</i>	brēvīūs,	brevissīmē.
Certō, <i>certainly,</i>	certīūs,	certissīmē.
Sæpē, <i>often,</i>	sæptīūs,	sæpissīmē.
Dīū, <i>long,</i>	dīutīūs,	diutissīmē.

The following Adverbs have no Positive:

Māgīs, *more*; maxīmē, *most*.
 Ocīūs, *more swiftly*; ocissīmē.
 Pōtīūs, *rather*; pōtissimum.
 Priūs, *sooner*; primum.

The following Adverbs have no Comparative:

Bēllē, *prettily*; bellissīmē.
 Mēritō, *deservedly*; mērittissīmē.
 Ob, *upon*; optime, *uppermost*, i.e. *best*.
 Nūpēr, *lately*, nūpērrīmē.

The following Adverbs have no Superlative:

Sēcūs, *differently*, sēcīūs; sātīs, *sufficiently*; sātīūs, *better*.

1. This supplementary extract is taken from *Donaldson*.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH ADJECTIVE.

In English we say "a good man," "a good woman," "a good work." Here the English Adjective *good* remains unchanged.

In expressing the same ideas in Latin, we say *bōn-ūs homo*, a good man; *bōn-ā femina*, a good woman; *bōn-um opūs*, a good work. Here the Latin Adjective *bon-us* undergoes a change in its terminations, and it agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case.

The Latin Adjective is declinable.

Adjectives are not declined in the English language.

English Adjectives are generally compared by adding to the Positive *er* for the Comparative, and *est* for the Superlative, or by placing *more* and *most* before the Positive, as

Grand,	grand- <i>er</i> ,	grand- <i>est</i> .
Beautiful,	more beautiful,	most beautiful.

Monosyllables and short words are generally compared by *er* and *est*; *more* and *most* are generally used with Polysyllables.

Every English Adjective susceptible of comparison may also be compared by the use of the Adverbs *more* and *most*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 5.

1. What do you mean by "the Positive Degree?" What do you mean by the Comparison of Adjectives? What effect has the Comparative Degree on the Adjective? What effect has the Superlative Degree on the Adjective?
2. How is the Comparative Degree formed? Give an example of this. How is the Superlative Degree formed? Give an example of this. How might these rules for the formation of the Comparative and Superlative Degrees be otherwise expressed?
3. How do Adjectives ending in *er* form the Superlative? Give an example. Can you mention any peculiarity with regard to Adjectives ending in *lis*?
4. How do Verbal Adjectives ending in *-dītūs*, *-fīcūs*, and *-vōlūs* form their Comparatives and Superlatives? How are the Comparative and Superlative formed when the Positive has a vowel before *us*? How are those Degrees formed when the Positive ends in *quus*?
5. Give the Comparatives and Superlatives of the following words: *Bonus*, *malus*, *magnus*, *parvus*, *multus*, *juvenis*, *senex*, *nequam*, *dives*, *exterus*, *inferus*, *superus*, *posterus*.
6. Give instances of Comparatives and Superlatives formed from Prepositions. Compare *Digne*, *breviter*, *sæpe*, and *diu*. Give instances of Adverbs which have no Positive Degree. Give instances of Adverbs which have no Comparative Degree. Give instances of Adverbs which have no Superlative Degree.

7. Can you mention any difference between the English and Latin Adjectives? Is the English Adjective *declinable*? Is the Latin Adjective *declinable*? Illustrate this by an example.
8. How are English Adjectives generally compared? When are English Adjectives compared by *er* and *est*, and when by *more* and *most*?

SECTION D.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE ADJECTIVES.

Thirteen Adjectives, the theme of which ends in *r*, and which are in other respects declined like those adduced ending in *is*, *e*, have in the Nominative Singular Masculine Gender *er* for *ris*, and therefore in this case three terminations, e.g., Masculine *acer*, Feminine *acris*, Neuter *acre* (Genitive *acris*, &c.) These Adjectives are:—

Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Acer</i> ,	<i>acris</i> ,	<i>acre</i> (Genitive <i>acris</i>), sharp.
<i>Alacer</i> ,	<i>alacris</i> ,	<i>alacre</i> (Genitive <i>alacris</i>), cheerful.
<i>Campester</i> ,	<i>campestris</i> ,	<i>campestre</i> (Gen. <i>campestris</i>), belonging to a field.
<i>Celēber</i> ,	<i>celēbris</i> ,	<i>celebre</i> (Genitive <i>celebris</i>), famous.
<i>Celer</i> ,	<i>celeris</i> ,	<i>celere</i> (Genitive <i>celeris</i>), swift.
<i>Equester</i> ,	<i>equestris</i> ,	<i>equestre</i> (Genitive <i>equestris</i>) equestrian.
<i>Paluster</i> ,	<i>palustris</i> ,	<i>palustre</i> (Genitive <i>palustris</i>), marshy.
<i>Pedester</i> ,	<i>pedestris</i> ,	<i>pedestre</i> (Genitive <i>pedestris</i>), on foot.
<i>Puter</i> ,	<i>putris</i> ,	<i>putre</i> (Genitive <i>putris</i>), unsound.
<i>Saluber</i> ,	<i>salubris</i> ,	<i>salubre</i> (Genitive <i>salubris</i>), wholesome.
<i>Silvester</i> ,	<i>silvestris</i> ,	<i>silvestre</i> (Genitive <i>silvestris</i>), woody.
<i>Terrester</i> ,	<i>terrestris</i> ,	<i>terrestre</i> (Genitive <i>terrestris</i>), earthy.
<i>Volucer</i> ,	<i>volucris</i> ,	<i>volucres</i> (Genitive <i>volucris</i>), swift, winged.

Celer alone retains the *e* in the inflection, Feminine *celēris*, Neuter *celere*, Genitive *celeris*.—*Madvig*.

Twelve Adjectives have double forms; one in *us*, *a*, *um*, and the other in *is*, *e*,—namely:—

Bijugus, *a*, *um*, and *bijugis*, *e*, with two yokes.
Exanimus, *a*, *um*, and *exanimis*, *e*, dead.
Hilarus, *a*, *um*, and *hilaris*, *e*, cheerful.
Imberbus, *a*, *um*, and *imberbis*, *e*, without a beard.
Imbecillus, *a*, *um*, and *imbecillis*, *e*, weak, imbecile.
Infrenus, *a*, *um*, and *infrenis*, *e*, without a bridle.
Inermus, *a*, *um*, and *inermis*, *e*, unarmed.
Multijugus, *a*, *um*, and *multijugis*, *e*, with many yokes.
Quadrjugus, *a*, *um*, and *quadrjugis*, *e*, with four yokes.
Semiermus, *a*, *um*, and *semiermis*, *e*, half-armed.
Semianimus, *a*, *um*, and *semianimis*, *e*, half dead.
Unanimus, *a*, *um*, and *unanimis*, *e*, unanimous.

THE PRONOUNS.

A *Pronoun* is a word used *instead of a Noun*, in order to avoid a repetition of that Noun, and in Latin it is declined with Gender, Number, and Case.

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.¹

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Egö,	<i>I</i>	N. Nös,	<i>we,</i>
G. Měi,	<i>of me</i>	G. Nostri and nostrum,	<i>of us</i>
D. Mīhi,	<i>to or for me</i>	D. Nōbīs,	<i>to or for us</i>
A. Mē,	<i>me</i>	A. Nös,	<i>us</i>
V. Caret		V. Caret	
A. Mē,	<i>by, or from me</i>	A. Nōbīs,	<i>by or from us</i>

Only four of the Pronouns have the Vocative Case:—

tū, mēūs, nōstēr, and nōstrās.

PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. Tū,	<i>thou</i>	N. Vös,	<i>ye</i>
G. Tuī,	<i>of thee</i>	G. Vestri and vestrum,	<i>of you</i>
D. Tībi,	<i>to or for thee</i>	D. Vōbis,	<i>to or for you</i>
A. Tē	<i>thee</i>	A. Vös,	<i>you</i>
V. Tū	<i>O thou</i>	V. Vös,	<i>O ye</i>
A. Tē,	<i>by, or from thee</i>	A. Vōbis,	<i>by, or from you</i>

Obs. Nostrām and vestrām are contracted from nostrōrum, nostrārū, and vestrōrum, vestrārū.

Obs. The Preposition cum is affixed to Ablatives of these Pronouns in both Numbers: as mecum, nobiscum, &c.

1. The term *Pronoun* is derived from the Latin word *pronomen*, which signifies for a *Noun*. Pronouns have been called *substitutes* since some of them stand not only for Nouns, but also for Adjectives, for a sentence or part of a sentence, or a series of propositions.

"Pronouns cannot be so precisely defined in theory, as not to admit many words which may also be considered as *Adjectives*."—Buttman.

II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun *sui* refers to the subject of the sentence, and it therefore cannot have a Nominative Case.

Singular and Plural.

- G. *Sui*, of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
 D. *Sibi*, to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
 A. *Sē* or *sēsē*, himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
 Abl. *Sē* or *sēsē*, by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

Obs. A true reflective Pronoun is wanting in English; in other words, there are no equivalents to the Latin pronominal forms *sui*, *sibi*, *se*.—*Latham's English Language*.

Obs. These Pronouns sometimes take the syllable *met*: as *ēgōmēt*, I myself; *vōsmēt*, ye yourselves; *sībimēt*, to himself.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE AND DEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Ille, *illā*, *illud*, he, she, it, that, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ill-ē</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i> ,	<i>ill-ūd</i>	N. <i>Ill-ī</i> ,	<i>ill-æ</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i> ,
G. <i>Ill-iūs</i> ,			G. <i>Ill-ōrum</i> ,	<i>ill-ārum</i> ,	<i>ill-ōrum</i>
D. <i>Ill-i</i> ,			D. <i>Ill-is</i> ,		
A. <i>Ill-um</i> ,	<i>ill-am</i> ,	<i>ill-ud</i>	A. <i>Ill-ōs</i> ,	<i>ill-ās</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i>
V. —			V. —		
A. <i>Ill-ō</i> ,	<i>ill-ā</i> ,	<i>ill-ō</i>	A. <i>Ill-is</i> .		

Obs. *Ille* is generally referred to a matter remote from the speaker, with regard to either *place* or *time*. *Ille* generally expresses honour.

Is, *eā*, *īd*, he, she, it, that, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Is</i> ,	<i>ēā</i> ,	<i>īd</i>	N. <i>Ii</i> ,	<i>eae</i>	<i>eā</i>
G. <i>Ejūs</i> ,			G. <i>Eōrum</i> ,	<i>eārum</i> ,	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>Eī</i> ,			D. <i>Iīs</i> or <i>eīs</i> ,		
A. <i>Eum</i> ,	<i>ēam</i> ,	<i>īd</i>	A. <i>Eōs</i> ,	<i>eās</i> ,	<i>eā</i>
Ab. <i>Eō</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	<i>eō</i>	Ab. <i>Iīs</i> or <i>eīs</i> .		

Obs. *Is* generally refers to the words of a sentence, or to a person implied in the relative *qui*.

Istě, istā, istūd, this, that, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Istě,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istūd</i>	N.	<i>Istī istae istā</i>
G.	<i>Istius</i>			G.	<i>Istōrum istārum istōrum</i>
D.	<i>Istī</i>			D.	<i>Istīs</i>
A.	<i>Istum.</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istūd</i>	A.	<i>Istōs istās istā</i>
V.	<i>Caret</i>			V.	<i>Caret</i>
A.	<i>Istō,</i>	<i>istā,</i>	<i>istō</i>	A.	<i>Istīs</i>

Obs. *Iste* is derived from *is*, and it is always used in connection with the *second person*. *Iste* frequently denotes contempt.

Ipsě, ipsā, ipsum, self, same, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Ipsě</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	N.	<i>Ipsī ipsae ipsā</i>
G.	<i>Ipsiūs</i>			G.	<i>Ipsōrum ipsārum ipsōrum</i>
D.	<i>Ipsī</i>			D.	<i>Ipsīs</i>
A.	<i>Ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	A.	<i>Ipsōs ipsās ipsā</i>
V.	<i>Caret</i>			V.	<i>Caret</i>
A.	<i>Ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	A.	<i>Ipsīs</i>

Obs. *Ipsē* is formed from *is*, and the termination *pse*. *Ipsē* is generally subjoined to Nouns or Pronouns, as *Jupitēr ipse*, Jupiter himself; *tu ipse*, thou thyself.

Idem, ēādem, īdem, the same, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
N.	<i>Idem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	N.	<i>Iidem ēādem ēādem</i>
G.		<i>ejūdem</i>		G.	<i>Eōrūdem ēārūdem ēō-</i>
D.		<i>eīdem</i>		D.	<i>Iīdem or ēīdem [rūdem</i>
A.	<i>Eūdem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	A.	<i>Eōdem ēādem ēādem</i>
V.	<i>Caret</i>			V.	<i>Caret</i>
A.	<i>Eōdem</i>	<i>ēādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	A.	<i>Iīdem or ēīdem</i>

Obs. *Idem* is formed from *is*, and the termination *dem*.

IV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite Pronouns are such as denote an object, in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual.

Aliquis, some one, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		
M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ali-quīs</i>	<i>ali-qua</i>	<i>ali-quod, or quid</i>
G. <i>Ali-cūjus</i>	<i>ali-cūjus</i>	<i>ali-cūjus</i>
D. <i>Ali-cui</i>	<i>ali-cui</i>	<i>ali-cui</i>
A. <i>Ali-quem</i>	<i>ali-quam</i>	<i>ali-quod, or quid</i>
V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. <i>Ali-quō</i>	<i>ali-quā</i>	<i>ali-quō</i>

<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Ali-quī</i>	<i>ali-quæ</i>	<i>ali-quæ</i>
G. <i>Ali-quōrum</i>	<i>ali-quārum</i>	<i>ali-quōrum</i>
D. <i>Ali-quībus</i>	<i>ali-quībus</i>	<i>ali-quībus</i>
A. <i>Ali-quos</i>	<i>ali-quas</i>	<i>ali-quæ,</i>
V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. <i>Ali-quibus</i>	<i>ali-quibus</i>	<i>ali-quibus</i>

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are:—*Aliquis*, *some one*; *quisquam*, *any one*; *quidam*, *a certain one*; *si quis*, *if any*; *quispiam*, *some one*; *quilibet*, *or quivis*, *any one you please*; *ne quis*, *lest any*; *unusquisque*, *each*; *quisque*, *every one*; *aliquipiam*, *any, some*.

V. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

Qui, quæ, quōd, who or which.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>Qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quōd</i>	N. <i>Qui</i>	<i>quæ</i>	<i>quæ</i>
G. <i>Cūjus</i>			G. <i>Quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>Cui</i>			D. <i>Quībus or queīs</i>		
A. <i>Quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quōd</i>	A. <i>Quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quæ</i>
V. <i>Caret</i>			V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. <i>Quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	A. <i>Quībus or queīs</i>		

The Compounds of *qui* are declined like *quidām*, some.

<i>Singular.</i>		
M.	F.	N.
N. Quidām	quædām	quōddām
G. Cūjusdām		
D. Cūidām		
A. Quëndām	quāndām	quōddām
V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. Quōdām	quādām	quōdām or quidām

<i>Plural.</i>		
M.	F.	N.
N. Quidām	quædām	quædām
G. Quōrūdām	quārūdām	quōrūdām
D. Quībūsdām, or quēisdām		
A. Quōsdām	quāsdām	quædām
V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. Quībūsdām, or quēisdām		

VI. INDEFINITE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quisquīs, whosoever, is thus declined:—

M.	F.	N.
N. Quisquīs	_____	quidquid or quicquid
A. _____	_____	quidquid or quicquid
Ab. Quōquo	quāqua	quōquo

Obs. Indefinite relatives are those formed by the addition of *-cunque* to any relative, and to the interrogative *uter*. The reduplicated *quisquis* is used both relatively and as an Adjective signifying "every." It is commonly found only in the Nominative Masculine and in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter *quidquid*.—*Donaldson*.

VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Quis or *quī*, *quae*, *quid* or *quōd*, who? which? what?

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
N. Quis or quī	quae	quid		N. Quī	quae	quae	
G. Cūjus	[or quōd			G. Quōrum	quārum	quōrum	
D. Cui				D. Quībus			
A. Quem quam	quid or quōd			A. Quōs	quās	quae	
V. <i>Caret</i>				V. <i>Caret</i>			
A. Quō	quā	quō		A. Quībus			

The *Interrogative* Pronoun, when joined with a Substantive, is *qui*. When it stands without a Substantive, it is *quis*, and it then forms *quid* in the Neuter of the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

VIII. THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns *měūs*, mine; *tűūs*, thine; *sűūs*, his own, her own, or their own; *nōstěr*, our own; *věstěr*, your own, are declined like Adjectives of three terminations.

Měūs makes *mī* in the Vocative Singular Masculine: *tűūs*, *věstěr*, and *sűūs*, have no Vocative.

Tűūs, *tűă*, *tűŭm*, thine.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tűūs	tűă	tűŭm	N. Tűi	tűæ	tűă
G. Tűi	tűæ	tűi	G. Tűörŭm	tűärŭm	tűörŭm
D. Tűō	tűæ	tűō	D. Tűis	tűis	tűis
A. Tűŭm	tűăm	tűŭm	A. Tűōs	tűās	tűă
V. <i>Caret</i>			V. <i>Caret</i>		
A. Tűō	tűă	tűō	A. Tűis	tűis	tűis

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

There is a striking resemblance in the formation of the Latin and the English Possessive Pronouns.

The Genitive Case of the Pronoun, both in the Latin and in the English, has given rise to a Possessive Adjective, which differs from the Genitive or Possessive Case only in being declined like an Adjective. Thus:—

From the Latin *mei*, Genitive of *ego*, comes *meus*, *mea*, *meum*, my;¹

1. The same analogy may also be traced in the Greek. From the Greek *μεῖν*, Genitive of *ἐγώ*, comes *μέος*, *μεν*, *μεν*, my, etc.

from the Latin *tui*, Genitive of *tu*, comes *tuus*, *tua*, *tuum*, thy; from the Latin *cujus*, Genitive of *quis*, *quæ*, *quid*, comes *cujus*, *cuja*, *cujum*, belonging to whom?

From the Anglo-Saxon *min*, Genitive of *ic*, I, comes *min* Masculine, *mine* Feminine, *min* Neuter, my; from the Anglo-Saxon *thin*, Genitive of *thu*, comes *thin* Masculine, *thine* Feminine, *thin* Neuter, thy.

Nostras, belonging to our nation, *vestras*, belonging to your nation, and *cujas*, of what nation, are regularly declined after the Third Declension as Adjectives of one termination.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N. Nōstrās	nōstrāte	N. Nōstrātēs	nōstrātiā
G. Nōstrātis		G. Nōstrātiūm	
D. Nōstrāti,		D. Nōstrātibūs	
A. Nōstrātem,	nōstrāte	A. Nostrātēs	nōstrātiā
V. Nōstrās	nōstrāte	V. Nostrātēs	nostrātiā
A. Nōstrāte tī		A. Nostrātibūs.	

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 6.

1. What do you mean by the term "Pronoun?" Mention those Pronouns which have a Vocative Case. Is there a true reflective Pronoun in the English Language?
2. Give the Nominative Singular Neuter of *Ille*, *Iste*, and *Ipse*. Can you mention any peculiarities with regard to these words?
3. Give the Declension of the Relative Pronoun *Qui*. How are Indefinite Relative Pronouns formed?
4. Decline the Interrogative *Quis* or *Qui*. When is the form *quis* used? When is the form *qui* preferred?
5. According to what models are the Possessive Pronouns declined? Give the Vocative of *Meus*. Mention those Possessive Pronouns which have no Vocative.
6. How are Possessive Pronouns generally formed. Explain, by examples, the remarkable analogy which exists in Latin and English in the formation of the Possessive Pronouns.

SECTION E.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The Genitives *mei*, and *nostri* or *nostrum*, *tui*, and *vestri* or *vestrum*, are really the Genitives Singular and Plural of the Possessives *meus*, *noster*, *tuus*, and *vester*, which are used instead of them in all instances

except when a particular emphasis of personality is required. In the Plural Genitive, *nostri*, *vestri*, are used when we speak of the persons as a whole; as *memoria nostri tua*, "your recollection of us," as a single object of thought: *habetis ducem memorem vestri*, "you have a general mindful of you all," as a body. But we use *nostrum*, *vestrum*, when we speak of the persons as a collection of separate elements; thus these Genitives are used with *omnium*; as *patria est communis omnium nostrum parens*, "our native land is the common parent of all of us," many and separable as we are.—Donaldson.

Besides the Possessive Pronouns the Latins have other Adjectives, which denote a person or thing pronominally (by way of reference) with relation to its quality, size, or number, as *talis*, such. The Adjectives which are formed to denote one and the same idea as modified according to the different kinds of Pronouns, are called correlative Adjectives.

These Adjectives are:—

<i>Demonstrative.</i>	<i>Relative and Interrog.</i>	<i>Indefinite.</i>
<i>Talis</i> , <i>e</i> , such a one.	<i>qualis</i> , <i>e</i> , as, or of what kind.	<i>qualiscunque</i> and <i>qualislibet</i> , of whatever kind.
<i>Tantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , so great.	<i>quantus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , as great, or how great?	<i>quantuscunque</i> and <i>quantuslibet</i> , however great.
<i>Tot</i> (indeclinable), so many.	<i>quot</i> , as many, or how many?	<i>quotcunque</i> and <i>quot-quot</i> , however many.
<i>Totidem</i> , just as many.	<i>quotus</i> , <i>a</i> , <i>um</i> , which in the series?	—Madvig.

From Pronouns are formed pronominal Adverbs, denoting place where, place whither, and place whence.

1. Pronominal Adverbs denoting the place *where* anything is done:—*ibi*, here or there; *hic*, here; *istic*, there, near you; *illic*, in that place; *ibidem*, in the same place; *alibi*, elsewhere; *ubi*, where; *ubicunque* and *ubiubi*, wherever. All these Adverbs ending in *i* are properly ancient Datives or locatives, denoting place where.

2. Pronominal Adverbs denoting the place *whither* anything proceeds:—*eo*, thither; *huc*, hither; *alio*, to another place; *quo*, to which place; *utro*, to which of two places.

3. Pronominal Adverbs denoting the place *whence* anything proceeds:—*inde*, thence; *hinc*, from this place; *istinc*, from that place.

By composition with *ecce* or *en* (lo!) arose the pronominal forms used only in common life, *eccum*, *eccam*, *eccos*, *eccas*, *eccillum* or *ellum*, *ellam*, *ellos*, *ellas*, *eccistam*. *Reapse* is an Ablative Case signifying "in reality."—Zumpt.

THE VERB.

A Verb is a word which expresses an assertion, as *pŭer scribĭt*, the boy writes, *pŭer currĭt*, the boy runs.

Obs. Here the assertions made about the boy are, respectively, that he *writes* (*scribit*), and that he *runs* (*currit*). These assertions are Verbs. No complete sentence can be formed without a Verb. A Verb is the *principal word* in a sentence, therefore it is called "*verbum*," the word.

The subject of the Verb is the word about which the assertion is made.

Obs. In the sentences *pŭer scribĭt*—the boy writes—*pŭer currĭt*—the boy runs—*pŭer*, the boy, is the subject, because it is the word about which the assertions (of *writing* and *running*) are made.

An Active or Transitive Verb is one in which the action passes on to a Noun following, as *pŭer scribĭt ĕpĭstŏlam*, the boy writes a letter.¹

Obs. Here the action passes on (as it were) from the verb *scribit* to the word *epistolam*, a letter. This word, to which the action passes on, is called the *object* of the Verb. An Active Verb expresses such an action as requires the addition of an *object* to complete the sense. The object may be either *expressed* or *understood*; if we say, "the boy writes"—we must mean, that he writes a letter or something; if we say, "the boy eats," we must mean, that he eats bread or something.

A Neuter or Intransitive Verb is one in which the action is limited to the subject of the Verb,

. In order to avoid embarrassing the learner, I have here limited myself to an explanation of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs simply. "*Irregular Verbs*, *Defective Verbs*, etc., are explained under their respective heads.

1. *Transitive* from *transeo*, to *pass over*, because the action passes over from the subject to the object.

and does not pass on to a Noun following, as *pŭer rĭdĕt*, the boy laughs, *pŭer cŭrrĭt*, the boy runs.¹

Obs. Here the words, *rĭdĕt* (laughs) and *cŭrrĭt* (runs), are limited to the subject, *pŭer* (the boy). Intransitive Verbs do not require the addition of an object in order to complete the sense. The notion of *activity* contained in such words as "he runs"—"he springs"—"he vaults"—is limited to the person who runs, springs, or vaults; therefore, although these Verbs do imply activity, they are not Active or Transitive Verbs, because the action is limited to the subject, and does not pass on to a Noun following.

Transitive Verbs have two Voices, the Active Voice ending in *o*, as *āmo*, I love, and the Passive Voice ending in *or*, as *āmōr*, I am loved.

The Active Voice represents the subject as *acting upon* the object; as *pŭer lĕgit lĭbrum*, the boy reads the book.

The Passive Voice represents the object as *acted upon* by the subject, as *lĭber lĕgĭtŭr a pŭērō*, the book is read by the boy.²

Intransitive Verbs have properly no Passive Voice, because they have no object.

Obs. Whenever a Passive Voice is formed from Intransitive Verbs, it is only as an Impersonal Verb, or in the Infinitive Mood, as *curritur*, "running is taking place," i.e., "they run", *stari jubet*, "he orders that a halt should be made."

Personal Verbs are those which have different Persons, as *ĕgō curro*, I run, *tū currĭs*, thou runnest.

Impersonal Verbs are those which have not

1. These Verbs are called *Neuter*—neither, because they are neither Active nor Passive. They are also called *Intransitive*, from *in* not, and *transeo*, to pass over, because the action *does not pass over* from the subject to an object.

2. Passive, from *Patior*, to suffer; because the object *suffers*, or undergoes an action.

different persons, but are used in the Third Person Singular only, and have no Personal Nominative Case, as *delectat*, it delights, *jūvāt*, it benefits.

THE MOODS.

A Mood expresses *the manner* of the action or state denoted by the Verb.

Verbs have Four Moods or manners of representing a state or action. The Indicative, the Imperative, the Subjunctive or Potential, and the Infinitive.¹

The Indicative Mood declares a matter simply or unconditionally, as *pŭer scrĭbit*, the boy is writing; or it asks a question, as *scrĭbis tū*, are you writing?

Obs. The Indicative Mood expresses actual existence.—*Arnold.*

The Imperative Mood commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits, and with a negative it implies prohibition, as *scrĭbĕ*, write, *vĕnĭ*, come, *nĕ pĕccā*, do not sin.

The Subjunctive or Potential Mood speaks of matters as conceived by the mind, or dependent on other circumstances.²

1. *Indicative* from *indicare*, to indicate (simply or absolutely). *Imperative*, from *imperare*, to command. *Subjunctive*, from *subjungere*, to subjoin. *Potential*, from *posse*, to be able. *Infinitive*, from *infinitus*, unlimited, because it is not limited to any particular subject.

2. Madvig and Dr. Kennedy class the Subjunctive and Potential under one head—the Conjunctive Mood.

Donaldson, Dr. Smith, Arnold, and others retain the divisions which are given above.

It is called *Subjunctive* when it is *subjoined* to another word or clause of a sentence going before it, as *lęgo ut dīscam*, I read in order that I may learn.

Obs. Here *dīscam*, I may learn, is in the Subjunctive Mood.

It is called *Potential* when it implies *possibility* or duty, and it is generally distinguished by the signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should*, or *ought*, as *āmāvīssēm*, I should have loved.

The Infinitive Mood represents a matter in an indefinite manner, without reference to number or person, as *āmārē*, to love.

Obs. The *Infinitive* is not properly a mood, for it represents no *modification* of the notion of the Verb, but the simple notion itself. It is reckoned, however, amongst the *Moods*, just as the Nominative is amongst the cases.—*Arnold*.

The Infinitive Mood possesses inflected forms which are called the Gerunds and Supines.

THE GERUNDS.

The Active Voice has three Gerunds ending in *dī*, *dō*, *dum*; as *ām-āndī*, of loving, *ām-āndō*, in loving, *ām-āndum*, to love.

Obs. The Gerund is properly a Verbal Neuter Substantive, which is declined in the Singular only. Its inflections, *dī*, *dō*, and *dum* are used as oblique cases of the Infinitive. It corresponds with the English Verbal Substantive in *ing*.

THE SUPINES.

The Supine of the Active Voice ends in *um*.

Obs. The Supine in *um* is generally used after Verbs of Motion.

The Supine of the Passive Voice ends in *ū*.

Obs. The Supine in *u* is generally used after Adjectives, such as *fácilis*, *amabilis*, etc.

THE PARTICIPLES.¹

The Active Voice has two Participles, the Present Participle ending in *ans* or *ens*, and the Future Participle ending in *ūrūs*, as *āmāns*, loving, *āmatūrūs*, about to love.

The Passive Voice has two Participles, the Past Participle ending in *us*, and the Participle in *dus*, called also the Gerundive, as *āmātūs*, loved, *āmāndūs*, to be loved.¹

Obs. Participles are so called from *participare*, to partake, because they partake of the nature of both Verb and Adjective. They have the Tenses and governing power of a Verb, and are declined like Adjectives. The Participles are Verbal Adjectives. The Gerunds and Supines are Verbal Substantives.

Obs. A Participle is a Verbal Adjective differing from other Adjectives by carrying with it a notion of *time*.—*Arnold*.

THE TENSES.

A Tense indicates the *time* of the state or action denoted by the Verb.

Verbs have Six Tenses: Three of these, the Present, the Preter-Imperfect, and the Future Imperfect denote *unfinished* action, as *āmō*, I am loving, *āmābām*, I was loving, *āmābō*, I will love.²

1. See *Madvig*. Chap. xiii., Sec. 97, and *Zumpt*, Sec. 36.

2. See *Dr. Smith's Principia Latina*, p. 33, and *Dr. Kennedy's Progressive Latin Grammar*, p. 23.

The other three,—the Preter-Perfect, the Preter-Pluperfect, and the Future-Perfect denote *completed* action, as *āmāvī*, I have loved, *āmāvēram*, I had loved, *āmāvērō*, I shall have loved.

The *Present* Tense denotes present state or action as *Scrībo*, I write, or, I am writing.

The *Preter-Imperfect* Tense speaks of a thing that was going on, but not ended, at some time past, as *āmābam*, I was loving. It also indicates habit or custom, as *scrībēbam*, I used to write.

The *Preter-perfect* Tense speaks of an action lately done, as *scrīpsī*, I have written.

The *Preter-pluperfect* Tense denotes past action completed in past time, as *scrīpsēram*, I had written.

The *Future-Imperfect* Tense denotes future time, simply or absolutely, as *scrībam*, I shall write.

The *Future-perfect* Tense denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future event or action, as *quum scrīpsēro*, *prōficīscar*, when I shall have written, I will depart.

Obs. This Tense is often improperly called the *Future Subjunctive*. It has the signification of the Indicative Mood, and corresponds to the *Second Future* in English.

NUMBERS AND PERSONS OF THE VERB.

Verbs have Two Numbers, the Singular and the Plural, and Three Persons in each Number, as

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Am-ō,	<i>I love</i>	Am-āmūs,	<i>We love,</i>
Am-ūs,	<i>thou lovest,</i>	Am-ātis,	<i>ye love,</i>
Am-āt,	<i>he loves,</i>	Am-ant,	<i>they love,</i>

The Latin Verb forms its Persons by *inflection*, that is, by changing its terminations.

The English Verb forms only two of its persons by Inflection—the Second and the Third Person Singular.

CONJUGATION OF VERBS ACTIVE.¹

The Conjugation of a Verb is its regular formation and arrangement according to Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

Latin Verbs have Four Conjugations, which are known by the characteristic Vowels.

The First Conjugation is known by *ā* long before *re* in the Infinitive; as *āmārē*, to love.

(Except *dāre*, to give, which makes *a* short).

The Second Conjugation is known by *ē* long before *re* in the Infinitive; as *mōnērē*, to advise.

The Third Conjugation is known by *ē* short before *re* in the Infinitive; as *rēgērē*, to rule.

The Fourth Conjugation is known by *ī* long before *re* in the Infinitive; as *aūdīrē*, to hear.

1. In the Edition of the Eton Latin Grammar (from which I am now writing), printed at Eton in 1758, the above heading is given as *Declension* of Verbs Regular, but the term *Conjugation* has been long established by conventional usage. The Romans originally employed the term *declinare* in denoting the inflections of a Verb. We have extended the meaning of the word *Conjugatio* (which implies merely *classification*), and it now includes the *inflection* of the Verb as well as its classification.

STEM FORMS OF THE CONJUGATIONS.

The Present Infinitive is the great distinguishing feature of the Verbs as the Genitive Singular is of the Nouns.

The different manners in which the terminations of Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons are united with the stem of the Verb, render it necessary to divide all Verbs into Four Classes.

The First Conjugation comprises all Verbs whose stems end in *a*, as *amāre*. The Infinitive of Verbs of this Conjugation always ends in *-āre*.

The Second Conjugation comprises all Verbs whose stems end in *e*—as *mone-o*, I admonish; *monē-re*, to admonish. The Infinitive of this Conjugation always ends in *-ēre*.

The Third or Consonant Conjugation comprises all Verbs whose stems end in a Consonant or the Vowel *u*—as *scrib-o*, I write; *scrib-ere*, to write; *minu-o*, I lessen; *minu-ere*, to lessen. The Infinitive of Verbs of the Third Conjugation invariably ends in *-ere*—as *facio*, *facere*.

The Fourth Conjugation comprises those Verbs whose stems end in *i*, which is retained in all the Moods and Tenses—as *audi-o*, I hear; *audi-e-bam*, I heard; *audi-vi*, I have heard; *audi-re*, to hear. The Infinitive of the Fourth Conjugation invariably ends in *-ire*.

Verbs Active in *o* are conjugated after these examples:—

1. *Am-ō*, *ām-ās*, *ām-āvī*, *ām-ārē*; *ām-āndī*, *ām-āndō*, *ām-āndūm*; *ām-ātūm*, *ām-ātū*; *ām-āns*, *ām-ātūrūs*; to love.

2. *Dōc-ēō*, *dōc-ēs*, *dōc-ūi*, *dōc-ērē*; *dōc-ēndī*, *dōc-ēndō*, *dōc-ēndūm*; *dōct-ūm*, *dōct-ū*; *dōc-ēns*, *dōct-ūrūs*, to teach

3. *Lēg-ō*, *lēg-īs*, *lēg-ī*, *lēg-ērē*; *lēg-ēndī*, *lēg-ēndō*, *lēg-ēndūm*; *lēct-ūm*, *lect-ū*, *lēg-ēns*, *lēct-ūrūs*, to read.

4. *Aūd-iō*, *aūd-īs*, *aūd-ivī*, *aūd-irē*, *aūd-iēndī*, *aūd-iēndō*, *aūd-iēndūm*; *aūd-itūm*, *aūd-itū*; *aūd-iēns*, *aūd-itūrūs*, to hear.

EXPLANATION.

A Latin Verb consists of two parts—the Root and the Inflection. The root of the Verb is that part of it which remains unchanged. The inflections are its variable terminations. There are three special Roots.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Supine, and the Present Infinitive are selected as the Principal Parts of the Latin Verbs, for the following reasons:—

The Present Indicative contains the *first or general root*, thus *ām-ō*,

contains the root *am*, and from it are formed the Tenses of the Present Line, thus from

1. *Am-ō*, comes *am-ābām*, *am-ābō*, *am-ātō*, *am-ēm*, *am-ārēm*, *am-ārē*, *am-āns*, *am-āndī*, *am-āndō*, *am-āndūm*, *am-āndūs*.

The Perfect Indicative contains the *Second Root*, or the Root of the Perfect Line, thus *ām*, of the Present is formed into *āmāv*—the Root of the Perfect Line, as

2. *Amāv-i*, *āmāv-eram*, *āmāv-erim*, *āmāv-isse*, *āmāv-ero*, *āmav-isse*.

The Supine in *um* contains the Third Root; thus from the First Root, *am*, in *am-o*, is formed the Third Root, *āmāt*, and from this Third Root are formed the Latter Supine, the Past Participle and the Future in *rus*, as

3. *Amāt-um*, *āmāt-u*, *āmāt-ūs*, *āmāt-urus*.

The Infinitive Present also appears in the Conjugation, because it is the great distinguishing feature of the Verbs.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 7.

1. What do you mean by "A Verb?" What do you understand by the "Subject of a Verb?" Illustrate your meaning by an example. Clearly explain the distinction between an Active and a Neuter Verb? Is "he runs" an Active Verb? Give reasons for what you assert about the Verb "he runs?"
2. How many Voices have Transitive Verbs? Why have Intransitive Verbs (properly speaking) no Passive Voice? What expedients are adopted occasionally in order to supply this deficiency?
3. What do you mean by "a Mood?" How many Moods have Verbs? What do you mean by the Indicative, the Imperative, the Subjunctive, and Infinitive Moods, respectively? By what other name is the Subjunctive Mood known, and when? Is the Infinitive (properly speaking) a Mood? Give reasons for your assertion.
4. What Inflected forms does the Latin Infinitive possess? What do you mean by "the Gerunds" and "the Supines?" and what Parts of Speech do you consider them to be?
5. What are Participles? Why are they so called? How many Participles are there in the Active Voice? What is the Participle in *du*s, and what other name has it?
6. What do you mean by "a Tense?" How many Tenses are there in the Latin Verb? Explain the difference between the Future Imperfect Tense and the Future Perfect Tense.
7. How does the Latin Verb form its Persons? What are the only Persons of the English Verb which are formed by Inflection?
8. What do you mean by the term Conjugation? How many Conjugations are there? How are they distinguished, respectively? Can you give any reason for the General Division of Latin Verbs into Four Conjugations.

ACTIVE VOICE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation form the Preterperfect Tense in *āvī*, and the Active Supine in *ātum*.

Am-ō, āmāv-ī, āmāt-um, ām-ārē, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense—do, or am.*¹

Sing.	<i>Am-ō</i>	I	love,	do	love, or am loving
	<i>ām-ās,</i>	Thou	lovest,	dost	love, or art loving
	<i>ām-āt,</i>	He	loveth,	doth	love, or is loving
Plur.	<i>Am-amūs,</i>	We	love,	do	love, or are loving
	<i>ām-atīs,</i>	Ye	love,	do	love, or are loving
	<i>ām-ant,</i>	They	love,	do	love, or are loving

Preterimperfect Tense—did or was.

Sing.	<i>Am-ābām,</i>	I	did	love, or was	loving
	<i>ām-abas,</i>	Thou	didst	love, or was	loving
	<i>ām-abāt,</i>	He	did	love, or was	loving
Plur.	<i>Am-abāmūs,</i>	We	did	love, or were	loving
	<i>ām-abatīs,</i>	Ye	did	love, or were	loving
	<i>ām-abant,</i>	They	did	love, or were	loving

Preterperfect Tense—have.

Sing.	<i>Amāv-ī,</i>	I	loved, or have	loved
	<i>āmav-istī,</i>	Thou	lovedst, or hast	loved
	<i>āmav-īt,</i>	He	loved, or has	loved
Plur.	<i>Amav-imūs,</i>	We	loved, or have	loved
	<i>āmav-istīs,</i>	Ye	loved, or have	loved
	<i>āmav-ērunt or ērē,</i>	They	loved, or have	loved

1. The English Verb has three distinct forms for the Present Indicative where the Latin has one Inflected form only.

"I love," "I do love," and "I am loving," are all rendered into Latin by the single form *am-o*. In English, "I love," is the simple form; "I do love," is the emphatic form, and "I am loving," is the progressive form.

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing. Amāv-ērām,	I	had	loved
āmav-ēras,	Thou	hadst	loved
āmav-ērāt,	He	had	loved
Plur. Amav-ēramūs,	We	had	loved
āmav-ēratis,	Ye	had	loved
āmav-ērant,	They	had	loved

First Future, or Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing. Am-ābō,	I	shall or will	love
ām-abīs,	Thou	shalt or wilt	love
ām-abīt,	He	shall or will	love
Plur. Am-abīmūs,	We	shall or will	love
ām-abītis,	Ye	shall or will	love
ām-abūnt,	They	shall or will	love

Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense—shall have.¹

Sing. Amāv-ērō,	I	shall have	loved
āmav-ērīs,	Thou	shalt have	loved
āmav-ērīt,	He	shall have	loved
Plur. Amav-ērīmūs,	We	shall have	loved
āmav-ērītīs,	Ye	shall have	loved
āmav-ērīnt,	They	shall have	loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.²

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing. Am-ā, Love thou		Plur. Am-ātē, Love ye
-----------------------	--	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Sing. Am-atō, thou shalt love		Plur. Am-atōtē, ye shall love
Am-atō, he shall love		Am-antō, they shall love

1. The *Future Perfect* or *Second Future* is often (improperly) classed with the *Subjunctive Mood*.

In inserting the *Future Perfect* in the *Indicative*, I have followed the example of *Madvig*, *Zumpt*, *Dr. Kennedy*, *Dr. Smith*, *Arnold*, *Anthon*, and other eminent grammarians.

2. This division of the *Imperative Mood* is given in accordance with the views of *Madvig*, *Zumpt*, *Dr. Kennedy*, and *Dr. Smith*. All good Grammarians universally consider the old arrangement of this *Mood* as quite erroneous.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing.	Am-ēm,	I	may	or can	love
	ăm-ēs,	Thou	mayest	or canst	love
	ăm-ēt,	He	may	or can	love
Plur.	Am-ēmūs,	We	may	or can	love
	ăm-ētis,	Ye	may	or can	love
	ăm-ēnt,	They	may	or can	love

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, should, or ought.

Sing.	Am-ārēm,	I	might	or could	love
	ăm-arēs,	Thou	mightest	or couldst	love
	ăm-arēt,	He	might	or could	love
Plur.	Am-arēmūs,	We	might	or could	love
	am-arētis,	Ye	might	or could	love
	am-arēnt,	They	might	or could	love

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have.

Sing.	Amav-ērīm,	I	may	have loved
	amav-ēris,	Thou	mayest	have loved
	amav-ērit,	He	may	have loved
Plur.	Amav-ērīmūs,	We	may	have loved
	amav-ērītis, ¹	Ye	may	have loved
	amav-ērīnt,	They	may	have loved

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, would, should, or ought to have.

Sing.	Amav-issēm,	I	might	have loved
	amav-isses,	Thou	mightest	have loved
	amav-issēt,	He	might	have loved
Plur.	Amav-issēmūs,	We	might	have loved
	amav-issētis	Ye	might	have loved
	amav-issēnt,	They	might	have loved

1. The quantity of *-rimus* and *-ritis* in this Tense has been a cause of dispute to the old grammarians. The poets make the *i* common, but usage and philological reasoning are in favour of the long *i*.—*Donaldson*.

*Future Imperfect Tense.*¹

Sing.	Am-atūrūs sim,	I	may	be about to love
	am-atūrūs sīs,	Thou	mayest	be about to love
	am-atūrūs sīt,	He	may	be about to love
Plur.	Am-atūri sīmūs,	We	may	be about to love
	am-atūri sītīs,	Ye	may	be about to love
	am-atūri sint,	They	may	be about to love

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Am-arĕ, to love.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Amav-issĕ, to have loved.

Future Tense.

Amātū-rum esse, to be about to love.

GERUND.

Aman-dī,	of loving
Aman-dō,	in loving
Aman-dum,	to love

SUPINES.

Active.

Amāt-um, to love

Passive.

Amāt-ū, to be loved

PARTICIPLES.²*Present Tense.*

Am-ans, loving

Future.

Amāt-ūrus, about to love.

1. I have inserted this Tense on the authority of *Donaldson, Madvig, Valpy, Dr. Smith, and Dr. Kennedy.*

"This Tense is used after a Conjunction requiring a Subjunctive. Thus, *since I shall be, cum futurus sim; I doubt whether I shall love, dubito an amaturus sim; If any one were to receive a benefit, si quis beneficium accepturus esset; If I am to do so, or If I am going, or am about to do so, quod si sim facturus.*"—*Valpy.*

2. *Amans* is declined like *Prudens*. *Amaturus* is declined like *Bonus*. See the Declension of the Adjectives.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT LINE.

(From the First Root *Am.*)

INDIC.	Present,	<i>Am-ō</i>
	Preterimperfect,	<i>Am-abām</i>
	Future,	<i>Am-abō</i>
IMPERATIVE		<i>Am-a</i>
POTENT.	Present,	<i>Am-ēm</i>
	Preterimperfect,	<i>Am-arēm</i>
INFIN.	Present,	<i>Am-arē</i>
PARTIC.	Present,	<i>Am-ans</i>
		<i>Am-andī</i>
GERUNDS.		<i>Am-andō</i>
		<i>Am-andūm</i>

FORMATION OF THE PRETER LINE.

(From the Second Root *Amav.*)

INDIC.	Preterperfect,	<i>Amav-ī</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Amav-ērām</i>
POTENT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Amav-ērim</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Amav-issēm</i>
	Future,	<i>Amav-ērō</i>
INFIN.	Preterperfect,	<i>Amav-issē</i>

(Formation from the Third Root *Amat.*)

SUPINES,		<i>Amat-ūm</i>
		<i>Amat-ū</i>
PARTIC.	Future in <i>rus</i>	<i>Amat-ūrūs</i>

MODEL EXAMPLES—(To be Conjugated like *Amō*).

Laūd-ō, I praise; *mūt-ō*, I change; *ōrn-ō*, I adorn; *pār-ō*, I prepare; *pūgn-ō*, I fight; *jūdic-ō*, I judge; *cērt-ō*, I contend; *clām-ō*, I exclaim.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation form the Preterperfect Tense in *ŭi*, and the Active Supine in *itum*.

Mön-ěo, *mönŭ-ĩ*, *mönit-um*, *mön-ěřě*, *to advise*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—do or am.

Sing.	<i>Mön-ěo</i> ,	I advise, do advise, <i>or</i> am advising
	<i>mön-ěs</i> ,	Thou advisest, dost advise, <i>or</i> art advising
	<i>mön-ět</i> ,	He adviseth, doth advise, <i>or</i> is advising
Plur.	<i>Mön-ěmŭs</i> ,	We advise, do advise, <i>or</i> are advising
	<i>mön-ětis</i>	Ye advise, do advise, <i>or</i> are advising
	<i>mön-ěnt</i> ,	They advise, do advise, <i>or</i> are advising

Preterimperfect Tense—did or was.

Sing.	<i>Mön-ěbām</i> ,	I did advise, <i>or</i> was advising
	<i>mön-ěbās</i> ,	Thou didst advise, <i>or</i> wast advising
	<i>mön-ěbāt</i> ,	He did advise, <i>or</i> was advising
Plur.	<i>Mön-ěbāmŭs</i> ,	We did advise, <i>or</i> were advising
	<i>mön-ěbatīs</i> ,	Ye did advise, <i>or</i> were advising
	<i>mön-ěbant</i> ,	They did advise, <i>or</i> were advising

Preterperfect Tense—have.

Sing.	<i>Mönŭ-ĩ</i> .	I advised, <i>or</i> have advised
	<i>mönŭ-istĩ</i> ,	Thou advisest, <i>or</i> hast advised
	<i>mönŭ-īt</i> ,	He advised, <i>or</i> hath advised
Plur.	<i>Mönŭ-ĩmŭs</i> ,	We advised, <i>or</i> have advised
	<i>mönŭ-istīs</i> ,	Ye advised, <i>or</i> have advised
	<i>mönŭ-ěrŭnt</i> , vel <i>ěrě</i> ,	They advised, <i>or</i> have advised

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing.	<i>Mönŭ-ěřām</i> ,	I had advised
	<i>mönŭ-ěřās</i> ,	Thou hadst advised
	<i>mönŭ-ěřāt</i> ,	He had advised
Plur.	<i>Mönŭ-ěřāmŭs</i> ,	We had advised
	<i>mönŭ-ěřātīs</i> ,	Ye had advised
	<i>mönŭ-erant</i> ,	They had advised

First Future, or Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing. Mönē-bō	I shall or will advise
mönē-bis,	Thou shalt or wilt advise
mönē-bit,	He shall or will advise
Plur. Mönē-bīmūs,	We shall or will advise
mönē-bītīs,	Ye shall or will advise
mönē-būnt,	They shall or will advise

Second Future or Future Perfect Tense—shall have.

Sing. Mönū-ēro,	I shall have advised
mönū-ēris,	Thou shalt have advised
mönū-ērit,	He shall have advised
Plur. Mönū-ērimus,	We shall have advised
mönū-ēritīs,	Ye shall have advised
mönū-ērint,	They shall have advised

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.¹

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing. Mön-ē,	Advise thou	Plur. Mön-ētē,	Advise ye
--------------	-------------	----------------	-----------

Future Tense.

S. Mön-ētō,	Thou shalt advise	P. Mön-ētōtē,	Ye shall advise
mön-ētō,	He shall advise	mön-ēntō,	They shall advise

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing. Mönē-ām,	I may or can advise
mönē-as,	Thou mayest or canst advise
mönē-āt,	He may or can advise
Plur. Mönē-āmūs,	We may or can advise
mönē-ātīs,	Ye may or can advise
mönē-ant,	They may or can advise

1. The Imperative has two Tenses. The Present Tense has the Second Persons only. The Future Tense has both the Second and Third Persons. The Present Tense is used in entreating as well as in commanding. The Future Tense is more emphatic; it is more particularly used in commanding, and it is always employed in legal formularies.

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, should, or ought.

Sing. Mönē-rēm,	I might <i>or</i> could advise
mönē-rēs,	Thou mightest <i>or</i> couldst advise
mönē-rēt,	He might <i>or</i> could advise
Plur. Mönē-rēmūs,	We might <i>or</i> could advise
mönē-rētīs,	Ye might <i>or</i> could advise
mönē-rēnt,	They might <i>or</i> could advise

Preterperfect Tense—may, or can have.

Sing. Mönū-ērīm,	I may have advised
mönū-ērīs,	Thou mayest have advised
mönū-ērīt,	He may have advised
Plur. Mönū-ērīmūs,	We may have advised
mönū-ērītīs,	Ye may have advised
mönū-ērīnt,	They may have advised

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, would, should, or ought to have.

Sing. Mönū-issēm,	I might have advised
mönū-issēs,	Thou mightest have advised
mönū-issēt,	He might have advised
Plur. Mönū-issēmūs,	We might have advised
mönū-issētīs,	Ye might have advised
mönū-issēnt,	They might have advised

*Future Imperfect Tense.*¹

Sing. Mön-ītūrūs sim,	I may be about to advise
mön-ītūrūs sīs,	Thou mayest be about to advise
mön-ītūrūs sīt,	He may be about to advise
Plur. Mön-ītūrī simūs,	We may be about to advise
mön-ītūrī sītīs,	Ye may be about to advise
mön-ītūrī sint,	They may be about to advise

1. The Future Imperfect Tense of the Subjunctive Mood is compounded of the Future Participle of the Verb and the Present Subjunctive of the Auxiliary Verb *Sum*.

I have retained the arrangement of the Eton Grammar and placed the Verb *Sum* at the end of the Active Voice, in order that the Pupil may learn the Four Conjugations Active immediately in connection with the explanations which precede them, and also since the use of *Sum*, as an Auxiliary, is confined chiefly to the Passive Voice.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mön-ērě, To advise

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Mönü-issě, To have advised

Future Tense.

Mönit-ürüm ěssě, To be about to advise

GERUND.

Mönēn-dī,	Of advising
mönēn-dō,	In advising
mönēn-dūm,	To advise

SUPINES.

Active.

Monit-um, to advise.

Passive.

Monit-ū, to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Mon-ens, advising.

Future.

Mönit-urus, about to advise.

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT LINE.

(From the First Root *Mön.*)

INDIC.	Present,	Mön-ěō
	Preterimperfect,	Mön-ěbām
	Future,	Mön-ěbō
IMPERATIVE,		Mön-ě
POTENT.	Present,	Mön-ěām
	Preterimperfect,	Mön-ěrēm
INFIN.	Present,	Mön-ērě
PARTIC.	Present,	Mön-ēns
		Mön-ēndī
		Mön-ēndō
GERUNDS.		Mön-ēndūm

FORMATION OF THE PRETER LINE.

(From the Second Root *Mönü.*)

INDIC.	Preterperfect,	<i>Mönü-ī</i>
	Preterpluperfect.	<i>Mönü-ērām</i>
POTENT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Mönü-ērīm</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Mönü-issēm</i>
	Future,	<i>Mönü-ērō</i>
INFINIT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Mönü-issē</i>

(Formation from the Third Root *Mönit.*)

SUPINES.	{	<i>Mönit-ūm</i>
		<i>Mönit-ū</i>
PARTIC.	Future in <i>rus</i> ,	<i>Mönit-ūrīs</i>

MODEL EXAMPLES—(To be Conjugated like *Moneo.*)

Dōc-ēō, I teach; *hāb-ēō*, I have; *præb-ēō*, I afford; *prāhib-ēō*, I forbid; *cōhib-ēō*, I restrain; *tērr-ēō*, I terrify.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Rĕg-ō, *rĕx-ī*, *rĕct-um*, *rĕg-ērĕ*, *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—do or am.

Sing.	<i>Rĕg-ō</i> ,	I rule, do rule, or am ruling
	<i>rĕg-īs</i> ,	Thou rulest, dost rule, or art ruling
	<i>rĕg-īt</i> ,	He ruleth, doth rule, or is ruling
Plur.	<i>Rĕg-īmus</i> ,	We rule, do rule, or are ruling
	<i>rĕg-ītīs</i> ,	Ye rule, do rule, or are ruling
	<i>rĕg-ūnt</i> ,	They rule, do rule, or are ruling

Preterimperfect Tense—did or was.

Sing.	<i>Rĕg-ēbām</i> ,	I did rule, or was ruling
	<i>rĕg-ēbas</i> ,	Thou didst rule or wert rule
	<i>rĕg-ēbāt</i> ,	He did rule, or was ruling
Plur.	<i>Rĕg-ēbamūs</i> ,	We did rule, or were ruling
	<i>rĕg-ēbatīs</i> ,	Ye did rule, or were ruling
	<i>rĕg-ēbant</i> ,	They did rule, or were ruling.

Preterperfect Tense—have.

Sing. Rēx-ī,	I ruled, or have ruled
rēx-istī,	Thou ruledst, or hast ruled
rēx-īt,	He ruled, or hath ruled
Plur. Rēx-īmūs,	We ruled, or have ruled
rēx-istīs,	Ye ruled, or have ruled
rēx-ērūnt, vel -ēre,	They ruled, or have ruled

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing. Rēx-ērām,	I had ruled
rēx-eras,	Thou hadst ruled
rēx-erāt,	He had ruled
Plur. Rēx-eramūs,	We had ruled
rēx-eratīs,	Ye had ruled
rēx-erant,	They had ruled

First Future, or Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing. Rēg-ām,	I shall or will rule
rēg-ēs,	Thou shalt or wilt rule
rēg-et,	He shall or will rule
Plur. Rēg-ēmūs,	We shall or will rule
rēg-etīs,	Ye shall or will rule
rēg-ēt,	They shall or will rule

Second Future, or Future Perfect Tense—shall have, will have.

Sing. Rex-ērō,	I shall have ruled
rex-eris,	You will have ruled
rex-erit,	He will have ruled
Plur. Rex-erimus,	We shall have ruled
rex-eritis,	Ye will have ruled
rex-erint,	They will have ruled

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing. Rēg-ě,	Rule thou		Plur. Rēg-ītě,	Rule ye
--------------	-----------	--	----------------	---------

Future Tense.

S. Rēg-īto,	Thou shalt rule		P. Rēg-ītōtě,	Ye shall rule
rēg-īto,	He shall rule		rēg-unto,	They shall rule

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing. Rēg-ām,	I may or can rule
rēg-ās,	Thou mayest or canst rule
rēg-āt,	He may or can rule
Plur. Rēg-āmūs,	We may or can rule
rēg-ūtīs,	Ye may or can rule
rēg-ant,	They may or can rule

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, should, or ought.

Sing. Rēg-ērem,	I might or could rule
rēg-erēs,	Thou mightest or couldst rule
rēg-eret,	He might or could rule
Plur. Rēg-eremūs,	We might or could rule
rēg-eretīs,	Ye might or could rule
rēg-erent,	They might or could rule

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have.

Sing. Rēx-ērīm,	I may have ruled
rēx-erīs,	Thou mayest have ruled
rēx-erīt,	He may have ruled
Plur. Rēx-erimūs,	We may have ruled
rex-erītīs,	Ye may have ruled
rex-erint,	They may have ruled

Preterpluperfect Tense—would, might, could, or ought to have.

Sing. Rēx-issem,	I would have ruled
rēx-isses,	Thou wouldst have ruled
rex-isset,	He would have ruled
Plur. Rēx-issemūs,	We would have ruled
rēx-issetīs,	Ye would have ruled
rēx-issent,	They would have ruled

Future Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Rec-tūrūs sim,	I may be about to rule
rec-tūrūs sis,	Thou mayest be about to rule
rec-tūrūs sīt,	He may be about to rule
Plur. Rec-tūrī simūs,	We may be about to rule
rec-tūrī, sītīs,	Ye may be about to rule
rec-tūrī sint,	They may be about to rule

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Rĕg-ĕrĕ, To rule

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rĕx-isse, To have ruled

Future Tense.

Rĕct-ūrĭm ĕssĕ, To be about to rule

GERUND.

Rĕgĕn-dĭ,	Of ruling
Rĕgen-dō,	In ruling
Rĕgĕn-dŭm,	To rule

SUPINES.

Active.

Rĕct-ŭm, to rule

Passive.

Rĕct-ŭ, to be ruled

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Rĕgĕns, ruling

Future in rus.

Rĕct-ŭrŭs, about to rule.

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT LINE.

(From the First Root *Rĕg.*)

INDIC.	Present,	Rĕg-ŏ
	Preterimperfect,	Rĕg-ĕbĕm
	Future,	Rĕg-ĕm
IMPERATIVE,		Rĕg-ĕ
POTENT.	Present,	Rĕg-ĕm
	Preterimperfect,	Rĕg-ĕrĕm
INFIN.	Present,	Rĕg-ĕrĕ
PARTIC.	Present,	Rĕg-ĕns
GERUNDS.	{	Rĕg-ĕndĭ
		Rĕg-ĕndō
		Rĕg-ĕndŭm

FORMATION OF THE PRETER LINE.

(From the Second Root *Rēx*.)

INDIC.	Preterperfect,	<i>Rēx-ī</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Rēx-ērām</i>
POTENT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Rēx-ērīm</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Rēx-issēm</i>
	Future,	<i>Rēx-ērō</i>
INFINIT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Rēx-issē</i>

(Formations from the Third Root *Rēct*.)

SUPINES,	{	<i>Rēct-ūm</i>
		<i>Rēct-ū</i>
.PARTIC,	Future in <i>rus</i> ,	<i>Rēct-ūrūs</i>

MODEL EXAMPLES—(To be Conjugated like *Rēgō*.)

Jūn-gō, I join; *dic-ō*, I say; *dūc-ō*, I lead, *tēg-ō*, I cover, *vēh-ō*, I carry.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation form the Preterperfect in *ivī*, and the Supine in *itum*.

Aūd-īō, *aūdīv-ī*, *aūdīt-um*, *aūd-īrē*, to hear.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—do or am.

Sing.	<i>Aūd-īō</i> ,	I hear, do hear, or am hearing
	<i>aūd-īs</i> ,	Thou hearest, dost hear, or art hearing
	<i>aūd-īt</i> ,	He heareth, doth hear, or is hearing
Plur.	<i>Aūd-īmūs</i> ,	We hear, do hear, or are hearing
	<i>aūd-ītīs</i> ,	Ye hear, do hear, or are hearing
	<i>aūd-iūnt</i> ,	They hear, do hear, or are hearing

1. Great variety of opinion exists with regard to the proper division of the First Root and Terminations of *Audio*, chiefly in consequence of the letter *i* being by some considered as belonging to the Root, and by others not, and also (on the supposition that it does belong to the Root), because it disappears at intervals in the Present Line.

In the division of the Root and Terminations of the Present Line, I have followed the authority of *Ruddiman*, *Zumpt*, *Dr. Smith*, *Dr. Kennedy*, and *Antho.*

Preterimperfect Tense—did or was.

Sing.	Aud-īšbam,	I did hear, or was hearing
	aud-īēbās,	Thou didst hear, or wert hearing
	aud-īēbāt,	He did hear, or was hearing
Plur.	Aud-īēbāmūs,	We did hear, or were hearing
	aud-īēbātīs,	Ye did hear, or were hearing
	aud-īēbānt,	They did hear, or were hearing

Preterperfect Tense—have.

Sing.	Aūdīv-ī	I heard, or have heard
	aūdīv-īstī,	Thou heardest, or hast heard
	aūdīv-īt,	He heard, or hath heard
Plur.	Aūdīv-īmūs,	We heard, or have heard
	aūdīv-īstīs,	Ye heard, or have heard
	aūdīv-ērūnt, vel -ērē,	They heard, or have heard

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing.	Aūdīv-ērām,	I had heard
	aūdīv-ērūs,	Thou hadst heard
	aūdīv-ērāt,	He had heard
Plur.	Aūdīv-ērāmūs,	We had heard
	aūdīv-ērātīs,	Ye had heard
	aūdīv-ērant,	They had heard

First Future, or Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing.	Aud-īam,	I shall hear
	aud-īēs,	Thou shalt hear
	aud-īēt,	He shall hear
Plur.	Aud-īemūs,	We shall hear
	aud-īetīs,	Ye shall hear
	aud-īent,	They shall hear.

Second Future or Future Perfect—shall have.

Sing.	Aūdīv-ēro,	I shall have heard
	aūdīv-ērīs,	You will have heard
	aūdīv-erīt,	He will have heard
Plur.	Aūdīv-ērimūs,	We shall have heard
	aūdīv-erītīs,	Ye will have heard
	aūdīv-erint,	They will have heard.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing. Aud-ī, Hear thou | Plur. Aud-itě, Hear ye

Future Tense.

S. Aud-ito, Thou shalt hear | P. Aud-itōtě, Ye shall hear
aud-ito, He shall hear | aud-iunto, They shall hear

POTENTIAL, OR SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing. Aud-īām,	I may or can hear
aud-īās,	Thou mayst or canst hear
aud-īāt,	He may or can hear
Plur. Aud-īāmūs,	We may or can hear
aud-īātīs,	Ye may or can hear
aud-īānt,	They may or can hear.

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, should, or ought.

Sing. Aud-irēm,	I might or could hear
aud-irēs,	Thou mightest or couldst hear
aud-irēt,	He might or could hear
Plur. Aud-irēmūs,	We might or could hear
aud-irētīs,	Ye might or could hear
aud-irēnt,	They might or could hear

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have.

Sing. Aūdīv-ērīm,	I may have heard
aūdīv-ērīs,	Thou mayst have heard
aūdīv-ērīt,	He may have heard
Plur. Aūdīv-ērīmūs,	We may have heard
aūdīv-ērītīs,	Ye may have heard
aūdīv-ērīnt,	They may have heard

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, would, should or ought to have.

Sing. Aūdīv-issēm,	I might have heard
aūdīv-issēs,	Thou mightest have heard
aūdīv-issēt,	He might have heard
Plur. Aūdīv-issēmūs,	We might have heard
aūdīv-issētis	Ye might have heard
aūdīv-issēnt,	They have heard.

Future-Imperfect Tense.

Sing. Aud-itūrūs sim,	I may be about to hear
aud-itūrūs sis,	Thou mayst be about to hear
aud-itūrūs sit,	He may be about to hear
Plur. Aud-itūrī sīmūs,	We may be about to hear
aud-itūrī sītīs,	Ye may be about to hear
aud-itūrī sint,	They may be about to hear.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aūd-irē	To hear.
---------	----------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Aūdīv-issē,	To have heard.
-------------	----------------

Future Tense.

Aūdīt-ūrūm ēssē,	To be about to hear.
------------------	----------------------

GERUND.

Aūdīēn-dī,	of hearing
Aūdīēn-dō,	in hearing
Aūdīēn-dūm,	to hear.

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Aūdīt-ūm, to hear.	Aūdīt-ū, to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present Tense.</i>	<i>Future in rus.</i>
Aūdīēns, hearing.	Aūdīt-ūrūs, about to hear

FORMATION OF THE PRESENT LINE.

(From the First Root *Aūd.*)

INDIC.	Present,	<i>Aūd-īo</i>
	Preterimperfect,	<i>Aūd-īēbām</i>
	Future,	<i>Aūd-īām</i>
IMPERATIVE,		<i>Aūd-ī</i>
POTENT.	Present,	<i>Aūd-īām</i>
	Preterimperfect,	<i>Aūd-īrēm</i>
INFIN.	Present,	<i>Aūd-īrē</i>
PARTIC.	Present,	<i>Aūd-īēns</i>
GERUNDS.	{	<i>Aūd-īēndī</i>
		<i>Aūd-īēndō</i>
		<i>Aūd-īēndūm</i>

FORMATION OF THE PRETER LINE.

(From the Second Root *Aūdiv.*)

INDIC.	Preterperfect,	<i>Aūdiv-ī</i>
	Preterpluperfect.	<i>Aūdiv-ērām</i>
POTENT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Aūdiv-ērīm</i>
	Preterpluperfect,	<i>Aūdiv-issēm</i>
	Future,	<i>Aūdiv-ēro</i>
INFINIT.	Preterperfect,	<i>Aūdiv-issē</i>

(Formation from the Third Root *Aūdit.*)

SUPINES.	{	<i>Aūdit-ūm</i>
		<i>Aūdit-ū</i>
PARTIC.	Future in <i>rus</i> ,	<i>Aūdit-ūrūs</i>

MODEL EXAMPLES—(To be Conjugated like *Aūdīō.*)

Mūn-īō, I fortify; *pūn-īō*, I punish; *vēst-īō*, I clothe; *nātr-īō*, I nourish; *cūstōd-īō*, I guard.

PARADIGM OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present	am-ō	am-ā	am-em	am-āre	am-ans
Imperf.	am-ābam		am-ārem	am-āre	
Fut. Imp.	am-ābo		amāt-ūrus sim	amāt-ūrum esse	amāt-ūrus
Pret. Perf.	amāv-i		amāv-erim	amāv-isse	
Pluperf.	amāv-eram		amāv-issem	amāv-isse	
Fut. Perf.	amāv-ero			amāt-urum fuisse	

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present	mon-eō	mon-ē	mon-eam	mon-ēre	mon-ens
Imperf.	mon-ēbam		mon-ērem	mon-ēre	
Fut. Imp.	mon-ēbo			mon-itu- rum esse	monit-urus
Pret. Perf.	monu-i		monu-erim	monu-isse	
Pluperf.	monu-eram		monu-issem	monu-isse	
Fut. Perf.	monu-ero			monit-ū- rum fuisse	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present	reg-ō	reg-ē	reg-am	reg-ere	reg-ens
Imperf.	reg-ēbam		reg-erem	reg-ere	
Fut. Imp.	reg-am			rect-urum esse	rect-ūrus
Pret. Perf.	rex-i		rex-erim	rex-isse	
Pluperf.	rex-eram		rex-issem	rex-isse	
Fut. Perf.	rex-ero			rect-urum fuisse	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present	aud-iō	aud-i	aud-iam	aud-ire	aud-iens
Imperf.	aud-iēbam		aud-irem	aud-ire	
Fut. Imp.	aud-iam			audit-ūrum esse	audit-ūrus
Pret. Perf.	audiv-i		audiv-erim	audiv-isse	
Pluperf.	audiv-eram		audiv-issem	audiv-isse	
Fut. Perf.	audiv-ero			audit-ūrum fuisse	

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE LATIN AND ENGLISH VERB.

The Persons of the Latin Verb are formed by Inflection. The English Language forms only two of the Persons by Inflection—the Second and Third Singular.

English Verbs have only two distinctions of Tense formed by Inflection, the *Indefinite Present* and the *Indefinite Past*, as *love, loved, strike, struck*; hence the English Verb has, strictly speaking, no Future Tense, nor any inflected form to mark the sub-divisions of time. In order to supply this deficiency, Auxiliary Verbs are combined with the principal Verbs.

This combination of the Auxiliary with the principal Verbs renders the English Language much more adapted for expressing *varieties* of time and action than the Latin is—"I write"—"I am writing"—"I do write," have in Latin only one equivalent—"scribo." "I wrote" and "I have written," are both represented by the single form "*scripsi*." This superiority of the English Language is principally apparent in the Active Voice.

The only true Subjunctive Inflection in the English Language is that of *were* and *wert*, as opposed to the Indicative forms *was* and *wast*.¹

We have in English only two Participles formed by Inflection, the Present and the Past Participle.²

The formation of Verbs in English, both regular and irregular, is principally derived from the Saxon.³

Our English Verbs may be divided into two great classes—the Ancient, Strong or Irregular, and the Modern, Weak or Regular.

The Ancient, Strong or Irregular Verbs change the interior Vowel in forming the Past Tense, and generally form the Past Participle in *en*, as *strike—struck—strick-en*; *fall, fell, fall-en*.

The Modern, Weak or Regular do *not* change the interior Vowel in forming the Past Tense, and they generally form the Past Participle in *d—ed* or *t*, as *move, moved, moved*; *fill, filled, filled*; *lose, lost, lost*. Many of our Modern Verbs are derived from the Latin.

All the Strong Verbs are of Saxon origin. None are classical.⁴

1. *Latham's English Language*. Chap. xxi.

2. *Arnold's English Grammar*, Sec. 12.

3. *Bishop Lowth's English Grammar*, page 55.

4. *Latham*. Chapter xxv.

THE VERB **SUM**—*I am.*

Sum is called an *Auxiliary Verb*, because it is employed in *helping* to complete the Conjugation of the Passive Voice; it is called a *Verb Substantive*, because it is the most general expression of existence. Its Conjugation is very irregular.

Sum, fūī, fūtūrūs, essē—to *be*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Sum,	I am
	Es,	Thou art
	Est,	He is
Plur.	Sūmūs,	We are
	Estīs,	Ye are
	Sunt,	They are

Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Eram,	I was
	Erās,	Thou wast
	Erāt,	He was
Plur.	Erāmūs,	We were
	Erātīs,	Ye were
	Erant,	They were

Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fui,	I have been <i>or</i> I was
	Fuistī,	Thou hast been <i>or</i> thou wast
	Fuīt,	He has been <i>or</i> he was
Plur.	Fuīmūs,	We have been <i>or</i> we were
	Fuistīs,	Ye have been <i>or</i> ye were
	Fuērunt <i>v.</i> fuērē,	They have been <i>or</i> they were

Past Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuēram,	I had been
	Fuērās,	Thou hadst been
	Fuērāt,	He had been
Plur.	Fuērāmūs,	We had been
	Fuērātīs,	Ye had been
	Fuērant,	They had been

Future-Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Ero,	I shall be
	Erīs,	Thou wilt be
	Erīt,	He will be
Plur.	Erīmūs,	We shall be
	Erītīs,	Ye will be
	Erunt,	They will be

Future Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuëro,	I shall have been
	Fuëris,	Thou wilt have been
	Fuërit,	He will have been
Plur.	Fuërimus,	We shall have been
	Fuëritīs,	Ye will have been
	Fuërint,	They will have been.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Es,	Be thou
Plur.	Estě,	Be ye

Future Tense.

Sing.	Esto,	Thou shalt be
	Esto,	He shall be
Plur.	Estôtě,	Ye shall be
	Sunto,	They shall be

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Sim,	I may be
	Sis,	Thou mayst be
	Sit,	He may be
Plur.	Simūs,	We may be
	Sītīs,	Ye may be
	Sint,	They may be

Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Essem <i>v.</i> förem,	I might be
	Essēs <i>v.</i> förēs,	Thou mightest be
	Essēt <i>v.</i> förēt,	He might be
Plur.	Essēmūs <i>v.</i> föremūs,	We might be
	Essētīs <i>v.</i> förētīs,	Ye might be
	Essent <i>v.</i> förent,	They might be

Future Imperfect Tense.

Sing.	Fütürūs sim,	I may be about to be
	Fütürūs sis,	Thou mayest be about to be
	Fütürūs sit,	He may be about to be
Plur.	Fütürī simūs,	We may be about to be
	Fütürī sītīs,	Ye may be about to be
	Fütürī sint,	They may be about to be

Perfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuërim,	I may have been
	Fuëris,	Thou mayest have been
	Fuërit,	He may have been
Plur.	Fuërimūs, ¹	We may have been
	Fueritīs,	Ye may have been
	Fuerint,	They may have been

Pluperfect Tense.

Sing.	Fuissem,	I might have been
	Fuissēs,	Thou mightest have been
	Fuisset,	He might have been
Plur.	Fuissemus,	We might have been
	Fuissētīs,	Ye might have been
	Fuissent,	They might have been

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect Tense.

Esse, to be.

Perfect Tense.

Fuisse, to have been.

1. The quantity of *-rimus* and *-ritis* in this tense has been a cause of dispute to the old grammarians. The poets make the *i* common, but usage and philological reasoning are in favour of the long *i*.—*Donaldson*.

*Future Tense.*Futūrus esse, or fōre, to be about to be.¹

PARTICIPLE.

*Future.*Futūr-us, -a, -um, about to be.²

PARADIGM OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF SUM.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
Present.	sum	es	sim	esse	futurus
Imperf.	eram		essem v. forem	esse	
Fut. imp.	ero		futūrus sim	fore v. futū- rum esse	
Preterper.	fui		fuerim	fuisse	
Pluperf.	fueram		fuissem	fuisse	
Fut. perf.	fuiro			futūrum fuisse	

The irregularity in the Conjugation of *Sum* is owing to its being derived partly from the Greek *σιμ*, partly from *φύω*. From this Verb came the old form of the Subjunctive, *fuiam, fuas, fuat*.—Zumpt.

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR* are thus declined.

1. *Am-ör, am-ärīs vel am-ärē, amat-ūs sūm vel fūi, am-ārī; amāt-ūs, amān-dūs:* to be loved.
2. *Mön-ëör, mön-ērīs vel mön-ērē, mönit-ūs sūm vel fūi, mön-ērī; mönit-ūs, mönēn-dūs:* to be advised.
3. *Ræg-ör, ræg-ērīs vel ræg-ērē, rēct-ūs sūm vel fūi, ræg-ī; rēct-ūs, rægēn-dūs:* to be ruled.
4. *Aūd-iör, aūd-irīs, vel aūd-irē, aūd-itūs sūm, vel fūi, aūd-irī; aūd-itūs, aūdiēndūs:* to be heard.

1. In combination with a participle *fore* must always be used, e. g. *laudandum fore*, not *laudandum futurum esse*.—Madvig.

2. Like *Sum* are declined its compounds *adsum, desum, insum, intersum, obsum, præssum, subsum, supersum*. *Prosum* takes *d* before *e*; as, *Prosum, prodes, prodest, prosumus, prodestis, prosunt*. *Absum* has Pres. Part. *absens*; *præssum, præsens*.—Dr. Kennedy.

The Perfect Line is compounded of the Past Participle with the several Tenses of the Auxiliary Verb *Sum*; as in the following example:—

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amör, ämārīs, ämātūs sum *vel* fuī, ämārī, *to be loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing.	Am-ör, ¹	I am loved
	äm-ārīs v. äm-ärě,	Thou art loved
	äm-ütür,	He is loved
Plur.	Am-ämür,	We are loved
	äm-ämīnī,	Ye are loved
	äm-äntür,	They are loved

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing.	Am-übär,	I was loved
	äm-übārīs v. äm-übärě,	Thou wast loved
	äm-übätür,	He was loved
Plur.	Am-äbämür,	We were loved
	äm-äbämīnī,	Ye were loved
	äm-äbäntür,	They were loved

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing.	Amät-ūs sum <i>vel</i> fūī, ²	I have been loved
	ämät-ūs ës v. fūistī,	Thou hast been loved
	ämät-ūs ësť v. fūit,	He has been loved
Plur.	Amät-ī sūmūs v. fūimūs,	We have been loved
	ämät-ī ësťis v. fūistīs,	Ye have been loved
	ämät-ī sūnt, fūērunt, v. ërë,	They have been loved

1. The Present, Imperfect, and First Future Tenses, Indicative, in the Passive Voice, are formed from the corresponding ones in the Active by changing *o* into *ör*, or *m* into *r*; as *amo*, *amor*; *amabam*, *amabar*; *amabo*, *amabor*. Thus also are formed the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, as *amem*, *amer*; *amarem*, *amarer*. So also in *moneo*, *rego*, *audio*.

2. *Amatus sum* is most commonly used; *amatus fui* is generally confined to poetry.—*Valpy*.

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing.	Amāt-ūs ērām v. fűērām,	I had been loved
	āmāt-ūs, ērās v. fűērās,	Thou hadst been loved
	āmāt-ūs, ērāt v. fűērāt,	He had been loved
Plur.	Amāt-ī ērāmūs v. fűērāmūs,	We had been loved
	āmāt-ī ērātīs v. fűērātīs,	Ye had been loved
	āmāt-ī ērānt v. fűērānt,	They had been loved

First Future or Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing.	Am-ābör,	I shall or will be loved
	āin-ābērīs, v. ām-ābērě,	Thou shalt or wilt be loved
	ām-ābītūr,	He shall or will be loved
Plur.	Am-ābīmūr,	We shall or will be loved
	ām-ābīmīnī,	Ye shall or will be loved
	ām-ābūntūr,	They shall or will be loved

Second Future or Future Perfect Tense—will have been.

Sing.	Am-ātūs ēro v. fuēro,	I shall have been loved
	ām-ātūs ērīs v. fuērīs,	Thou wilt have been loved
	ām-ātūs ērīt v. fuērīt,	He will have been loved
Plur.	Am-ātī ērīmūs or fuērīmūs,	We shall have been loved
	ām-ātī ērītīs v. fuērītīs,	Ye will have been loved
	ām-ātī ērunt v. fuērīnt,	They will have been loved

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Am-ārě,	Be thou loved
Plur.	Am-āmīnī,	Be ye loved

Future Tense.

Sing.	Am-ātör,	Thou shalt be loved
	ām-ātör,	He shall be loved
Plur.	Am-antör,	They shall be loved

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD,

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing.	Am-ēr,	I may or can be loved
	ām-ērīs, v. ām-ērě,	Thou mayest or canst be loved
	ām-ētūr,	He may or can be loved
Plur.	Am-ēmūr,	We may or can be loved
	ām-ēmīnī,	Ye may or can be loved
	ām-ēntūr,	They may or can be loved

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.

Sing. Am-ārē,	I might or could be loved
ām-ārēris v. āna-ārērē,	Thou mightest or couldst be loved
ām-ārētūr,	He might or could be loved
Plur. Am-ārēmūr,	We might or could be loved
ām-ārēminī,	Ye might or could be loved
ām-ārēntūr,	They might or could be loved

Preterperfect Tense—may have been.

Singular.

Amāt-ūs sīm v. fūērīm,	I may have been loved
āmāt-ūs sis v. fūērīs,	Thou mayest have been loved
āmāt-ūs sīt v. fūērīt,	He may have been loved

Plural.

Amāt ī sīniūs v. fūērīmūs,	We may have been loved
āmāt-ī sitīs v. fūērītīs,	Ye may have been loved
āmāt-ī sīnt v. fūērīnt,	They may have been loved

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, or would have been.

Singular.

Amāt-ūs ēs-sēm v. fūīs-sēm,	I would have been loved
āmāt-ūs ēs-sēs v. fūīs-sēs,	Thou wouldst have been loved
āmāt-ūs ēs-sēt v. fūīs-sēt,	He would have been loved

Plural.

Amāt-ī ēssēmūs v. fūīs-sēmūs,	We would have been loved
āmāt-ī ēs-sētīs v. fūīs-sētīs,	Ye would have been loved
āmāt-ī ēs-sēnt v. fūīs-sēnt,	They would have been loved

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Imperfect Tense.

Am-ārī, to be loved

Perfect Tense.

Am-ātum (am, um), *essē* or *fuisse*, to have been loved

Future Tense.

Am-ātum irī,¹ to be about to be loved

1. *Iri* is the Passive Infinitive of *eo*; and *amutum* is the Supine. *Amatum iri* is literally, *to be gone to love*.—*Vulpy*.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.

Am-ūtūs (*a, um*), loved or having been loved

Gerundive.

Am-andūs (*a, um*), fit to be loved

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mön-ěör, mön-ērīs, mön-ītūs sum *vel* fuī, mön-ērī,
to be advised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Mön-ěör,	I am advised
mön-ērīs v. mön-ērě,	Thou art advised
mön-ětūr,	He is advised
Plur. Mön-ēmūr,	We are advised.
mön-ēmīnī,	Ye are advised
mön-ëntūr,	They are advised

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Mön-ěbār,	I was advised
mön-ěbārīs v. mön-ěbārě,	Thou wast advised
mön-ěbātūr,	He was advised
Plur. Mön-ěbāmūr,	We were advised
mön-ěbāmīnī,	Ye were advised
mön-ěbāntūr,	They were advised

*Preterperfect Tense—have been.**Singular.*

Mönīt-ūs sūm v. fūī,	I have been advised
mönīt-ūs ēs v. fūīstī,	Thou hast been advised
mönīt-ūs ěst v. fūīt.	He hath been advised

Plural.

Mönīt-ī sūmūs v. fūīmūs,	We have been advised
mönīt-ī ěstīs v. fūīstīs,	Ye have been advised
mönīt-ī sūnt fūērūnt v. fūērě,	They have been advised

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.*Singular.*

Mönit-ūs ērām <i>v. fűērām</i> ,	I had been advised
mönit-ūs ērās <i>v. fűērās</i> ,	Thou hadst been advised
mönit-ūs ērāt <i>v. fűērāt</i> ,	He had been advised

Plural.

Mönit-ī ērāmūs <i>v. fűērāmūs</i> ,	We had been advised
mönit-ī ērātīs <i>v. fűērātīs</i> ,	Ye had been advised
mönit-ī ērānt <i>v. fűērānt</i> ,	They had been advised

First Future or Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Mön-ēbör,	I shall or will be advised
mön-ēbēris <i>v. mön-ēbēre</i> ,	Thou shalt or wilt be advised
mön-ēbitür,	He shall or will be advised
Plur. Mön-ēbīmür,	We shall or will be advised
mön-ēbīmīnī,	Ye shall or will be advised
mön-ēbüntür,	They shall or will be advised

Second Future or Future Perfect Tense—shall have been, will have been.

Sing. Monit-ūs ēro <i>v. fuēro</i> ,	I shall have been advised
monit-ūs ēris <i>v. fuēris</i> ,	You will have been advised
monit-ūs erit <i>v. fuērit</i> ,	He will have been advised
Plur. Monit-ī erīmus <i>v. fuerimus</i> ,	We shall have been advised
monit-ī eritis <i>v. fueritis</i> ,	Ye will have been advised
monit-ī erunt <i>v. fuerint</i> ,	They will have been advised

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing. Mön-ērē,	Be thou advised
Plur. Mön-ēmīnī,	Be ye advised

Future Tense.

Sing. Mön-ētör,	Thou shalt be advised
mön-ētör,	He shall be advised
Plur. Mön-entör,	They shall be advised

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing. Mön-ëär,	I may or can be advised
mön-ëärīs v. mön-ëärē,	Thou mayest or canst be advised
mön-ëütür,	He may or can be advised
Plur. Mön-ëümür,	We may or can be advised
mön-ëümīnī,	Ye may or can be advised
mön-ëüntür,	They may or can be advised

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.

Sing. Mön-ērër,	I might or could be advised
mön-ērērīs v. mön-ērērē	Thou mightst or couldst be advised
mön-ērētür,	He might or could be advised
Plur. Mön-ērēmür,	We might or could be advised
mön-ērēmīnī,	Ye might or could be advised
mön-ērëntür,	They might or could be advised

Preterperfect Tense—may have been.

Singular.

Mönīt-ūs sīm v. fūerīm,	I may have been advised
mönīt-ūs sīs v. fūerīs,	Thou mayest have been advised
mönīt-ūs sīt v. fūerīt,	He may have been advised

Plural.

Mönīt-ī sīmūs v. fūerīmūs,	We may have been advised
mönīt-ī sītīs v. fūerītīs,	Ye may have been advised
mönīt-ī sint v. fūerīnt,	They may have been advised

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, or would have been.

Singular.

Mönīt-ūs ës-sēm v. fūīs-sēm,	I would have been advised
mönīt-ūs ës-sēs v. fūīs-sēs,	Thou wouldst have been advised
mönīt-ūs ës-sēt v. fūīs-sēt,	He would have been advised

Plural.

Mönīt-ī ës-semūs v. fūīs-sēmūs,	We would have been advised
mönīt-ī ës-sētīs v. fūīs-sētīs,	Ye would have been advised
mönīt-ī ës-sēnt v. fūīs-sēnt,	They would have been advised

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Mon-ēri, To be advised

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Monīt-um esse vel fuisset, To have been advised

Future Tense.

Monīt-um iri, To be about to be advised

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect Tense.

Monīt-us, Advised or being advised.

The Participle in dus, or the Gerundive.

Monen-dus To be advised

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Rĕg-ōr, rĕg-eris, rĕct-ūs-sum vel fui, rĕg-ī, to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing.	Rĕg-ōr,	I am ruled,
	rĕg-ĕris v. rĕg-ĕrĕ,	Thou art ruled.
	rĕg-ītūr,	He is ruled,
Plur.	Rĕg-īmūr,	We are ruled,
	rĕg-īminī,	Ye are ruled.
	rĕg-untūr,	They are ruled.

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing.	Rĕg-ēbār,	I was ruled
	rĕg-ēbāris v. rĕg-ēbārĕ,	Thou wast ruled
	rĕg-ēbātūr,	He was ruled
Plur.	Rĕg-ēbāmūr,	We were ruled
	rĕg-ēbāminī,	Ye were ruled.
	rĕg-ēbāntūr,	They were ruled.

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing.	Rēct-ūs sūm v. fūī,	I have been ruled
	rēct-ūs ēs v. fūistī,	Thou hast been ruled
	rēct-ūs ēst v. fūit,	He hath been ruled
Plur.	Rēct-ī sūmūs v. fūīmūs,	We have been ruled
	rēct-ī ēstīs v. fūistīs,	Ye have been ruled
	rēct-ī sūnt, fūērunt v. fūēre,	They have been ruled.

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing.	Rēct-ūs ērām v. fūērām,	I had been ruled
	rēct-ūs ērās v. fūērās,	Thou hadst been ruled
	rēct-ūs ērāt v. fūērāt,	He had been ruled
Plur.	Rēct-ī ērāmūs v. fūērāmūs,	We had been ruled
	rēct-ī ērātīs v. fūērātīs,	Ye had been ruled
	rēct-ī ērānt v. fūērānt,	They had been ruled.

Future Tense—shall or will be.

Sing.	Rēg-ār,	I shall or will be ruled
	rēg-ērīs v. rēg-ērē,	Thou shalt or wilt be ruled
	rēg-ētūr,	He shall or will be ruled
Plur.	Rēg-ēmūr,	We shall or will be ruled
	rēg-ēmīnī,	Ye shall or will be ruled
	rēg-ētūr,	They shall or will be ruled

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have been.

Sing.	Rec-tūs ēro v. fuēro,	I shall have been ruled
	rec-tūs erīs v. fuerīs,	Thou wilt have been ruled
	rec-tūs erīt v. fuerīt,	He will have been ruled
Plur.	Rec-tī erīmūs v. fuerimūs,	We shall have been ruled
	rec-tī erītīs v. fuerītīs,	Ye will have been ruled
	rec-tī erunt v. fuerint,	They will have been ruled

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

No First Person.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Rēg-ērē,	Be thou ruled.
Plur.	Rēg-īmīnī,	Be ye ruled.

Future Tense.

S.	Rēg-ītōr,	Thou shalt be ruled.
	rēg-ītōr,	He shall be ruled.
P.	Rēg-untōr,	They shall be ruled.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing. Rēg-ār,	I may or can be ruled
reg-ārīs v. reg-ārē,	Thou mayest or canst be ruled
reg-ātūr,	He may or can be ruled
Plur. Reg-āmūr,	We may or can be ruled
reg-āmīnī,	Ye may or can be ruled
reg-āntūr,	They may or can be ruled.

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.

Sing. Reg-ērēr,	I might or could be ruled
reg-ērērīs v. reg-ērērē,	Thou mightst or couldst be ruled
reg-ērētūr,	He might or could be ruled
Plur. Reg-ērēmūr,	We might or could be ruled
reg-ērēmīnī,	Ye might or could be ruled
reg-ērēntūr,	They might or could rule

Preterperfect Tense—may have been.

Sing. Rēct-ūs sīm v. fuērīm,	I may have been ruled
rēct-ūs sis v. fuerīs,	Thou mayst have been ruled
rēct-ūs sīt v. fuerīt,	He may have been ruled
Plur. Rēct-īsimus v. fuērīmus	We may have been ruled
rect-ī sitīs v. fuerītīs,	Ye may have been ruled
rēct-ī sint v. fuērīnt,	They may have been ruled

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, would have been.*Singular.*

Rēct-ūs ēs-sem v. fuīs-sem,	I would have been ruled
rēct-ūs ēs-sēs v. fuīs-sēs,	Thou wouldst have been ruled
rēct-ūs ēs-sēt v. fuīs-set,	He would have been ruled

Plural.

Rēct-ī ēssēmus v. fuīs-sēmūs,	We would have been ruled
rēct-ī ēs-sētīs v. fuīs-sētīs,	Ye would have been ruled
rēct-ī ēs-sēnt v. fuīs-sēnt,	They would have been ruled

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Reg-ī,	To be ruled.
--------	--------------

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Rēct-um esse v. fuisse, To have been ruled

Future Tense.

Rēct-um iri, To be about to be ruled

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect Tense.

Rēct-ūs, ruled, or being ruled.

The Participle in dus, or gerundive.

Regēn-dūs, to be ruled.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Aud-īor, aud-īrīs, aud-ītūs sum *vel* fui, aud-īrī, *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Aūd-īor,	I am heard
aūd-īrīs v. aūd-īrē,	Thou art heard
aūd-ītūr,	He is heard
Plur. Aūd-īmūr,	We are heard
aūd-īmīnī,	Ye are heard
aūd-īuntūr,	They are heard

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Aūd-īēbār,	I was heard
aūd-īēbāris v. aūd-īēbāre,	Thou wast heard
aūd-īēbātūr,	He was heard
Plur. Aūd-īēbāmūr,	We were heard
aūd-īēbāmīnī,	Ye were heard
aūd-īēbāntūr,	They were heard

*Preterperfect Tense—have been.**Singular.*

Aūdīt-ūs sum v. fui,	I have been heard
aūdīt-ūs es v. fuīsti,	Thou hast been heard
aūdīt-ūs est v. fuīt,	He hath been heard

Plural,

Aūdit-ī sūmus <i>v. fuīmus,</i>	We have been heard
aūdit-ī ēstīs <i>v. fuistīs,</i>	Ye have been heard
aūdit-ī sūnt, fuērūnt, <i>v. fuēre,</i>	They have been heard

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.*Singular.*

Aūdit-ūs erām <i>v. fūeram,</i>	I had been heard
aūdit-ūs erās <i>v. fūerās,</i>	Thou hadst been heard
aūdit-ūs erāt <i>v. fūerat,</i>	He had been heard

Plural.

Aūdit-ī erāmus <i>v. fuerāmus,</i>	We had been heard
aūdit-ī erātīs <i>v. fuerātīs,</i>	Ye had been heard
aūdit-ī erānt <i>v. fuerānt,</i>	They had been heard

Future Tense—shall or will be.*Singular.*

Aūd-īār,	I shall or will be heard
aūd-īērīs <i>v. aūd-īērē,</i>	Thou shalt or wilt be heard
aūd-īētūr,	He shall or will be heard

Plural.

Aūd-īēmūr,	We shall or will be heard
aūd-īēmīnī,	Ye shall or will be heard
aūd-īentūr,	They shall or will be heard

*Futureperfect Tense.**Singular.*

Aūd-ītūs ēro <i>v. fuero,</i>	I shall have been heard
aūd-ītūs erīs <i>v. fuerīs,</i>	Thou wilt have been heard
aūd-ītūs erīt <i>v. fuerīt,</i>	He will have been heard

Plural.

Aūd-ītī erīmūs <i>v. fuerīmūs,</i>	We shall have been heard
aūd-ītī erītīs <i>v. fuerītīs,</i>	Ye will have been heard
aūd-ītī erunt <i>v. fuerint,</i>	They will have been heard

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing Aūd-īrē, Be thou heard | Plur. Aūd-īmīnī, Be ye heard

Future Tense.

Sing. Aūd-ītōr,	Thou shalt be heard
Aūd-ītōr,	He shall be heard
Plur. Aūd-iuntōr,	They shall be heard

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

*Present Tense—may or can be.**Singular.*

Aūd-īār,	I may or can be heard
aūd-īārīs v. aūd-īārē,	Thou mayst or canst be heard
aūd-īātūr,	He may or can be heard

Plural.

Aūd-īāmūr,	We may or can be heard
aūd-īāmīnī,	Ye may or can be heard
aūd-īāntūr,	They may or can be heard

*Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.**Singular.*

Aūd-īrēr,	I might or could be heard
aūd-īrērīs v. aūd-īrērē,	Thou mightest or couldst be heard
aūd-īrētūr,	He might or could be heard

Plural.

Aūd-īrēmūr,	We might or could be heard
aūd-īrēmīnī,	Ye might or could be heard
aūd-īrētūr,	They might or could be heard

*Preterperfect Tense—may have been.**Singular.*

Aūdīt-us sīm v. fūrīm,	I may have been heard
aūdīt-us sis v. fuerīs,	Thou mayest have been heard
aūdīt-us sit v. fuerīt,	He may have been heard

Plural.

Aūdīt-ī sīmus v. fuerīmus,	We may have been heard
aūdīt-ī sitis v. fuerītis,	Ye may have been heard
aūdīt-ī sint v. fuerint,	They may have been heard

Preterpluperfect Tense—would, might, could have been.

Singular.

Aūdit-ūs ēs-sēm v. fūīs-sēm,	I would have been heard
aūdit-ūs ēs-sēs v. fūīs-sēs,	Thou wouldst have been heard
aūdit-ūs ēs-sēt v. fūīs-sēt,	He would have been heard

Plural.

Audit-ī ēssēmūs v. fūīs-sēmūs,	We would have been heard
aūdit-ī ēs-sētīs v. fūīs-sētīs,	Ye would have been heard
aūdit-ī ēs-sēt v. fūīs-sēt,	They would have been heard

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

And-īrī, to be heard.

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Audīt-um essē v. fuissē, to have been heard.

Future Tense.

Audīt-um irī, to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect.

Audit-ūs, heard or being heard

The Participle in dus, or Gerundive.

Audien-dūs, to be heard.

PARADIGM OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partc.</i>
Present	amor	amāre	amer	amāri	amātus
Imperf.	amābar		amārer	amāri	
Fut. Imp.	amābor		amandus sim	amātum iri	amandus
Pret. Perf.	amātus sum vel fui		amātus essem vel fuisset	amātum esse vel fuisset	
Pluperf.	amātus eram vel fueram			amātum esse vel fuisset	
Fut. Perf.	amātus ero vel fuero			amandum fuisse	

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partc.</i>
Present	moneor	monere	monear	monēri	monitus
Imperf.	monēbar		monērer	monēri	
Fut. Imp.	monēbor		monendus sim	monitum iri	monendus
Pret. Perf.	monitus sum vel fui		monitus sim vel fuisset	monitum esse vel fuisset	
Pluperf.	monitus eram vel fueram		monitus essem vel fuisset	monitum esse vel fuisset	
Fut. Perf.	monitus ero vel fuero			monendum fuisse	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partc.</i>
Present	regor	regere	regar	regi	rectus
Imperf.	regēbar		regerer	regi	
Fut. Imp.	regar		regendus sim	rectum iri	regendus
Pret. Perf.	rectus sum vel fui		rectus sim vel fuisset	rectum esse vel fuisset	
Pluperf.	rectus eram vel fueram		rectus essem vel fuisset	rectum esse vel fuisset	
Fut. Perf.	rectus ero vel fuero			regendum fuisse	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Partc.</i>
Present	audior	audire	audiar	audiri	auditus
Imperf.	audiēbar		audirer	audiri	
Fut. Imp.	audiar		audiendus sim	auditum iri	audiendus
Pret. Perf.	auditus sum vel fui		auditus sim vel fuisset	auditum esse vel fuisset	
Pluperf.	auditus eram vel fueram		auditus essem vel fuisset	auditum esse vel fuisset	
Fut. Perf.	auditus ero vel fuero			audiendum fuisse	

THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

The two Future Participles in *rus* and *dus* are often combined with the Tenses of *Sum* in such a manner that a new Conjugation called the *Periphrastic* Conjugation is formed as follows:—

ACTIVE.

Present.	<i>Amātūrus sum, etc.,</i>	I am about to love.
Imperfec.	<i>Amaturus eram, etc.,</i>	I was about to love,
Perfect.	<i>Amaturus fui, etc.,</i>	I have been about to love.
Pluperfect.	<i>Amaturus fueram, etc.,</i>	I had been about to love.
1st Future.	<i>Amaturus ero, etc.,</i>	I shall be about to love.
2nd Future.	<i>Amaturus fuero, etc.</i>	I shall have been about to love

The other Moods are formed from the Indicative, as is shown in the Conjugation of *Sum*:—

PASSIVE.

Present.	<i>Amandus sum,</i>	I am fit to be loved.
Imperfect.	<i>Amandus eram,</i>	I was fit to be loved.
Perfect.	<i>Amandus fui,</i>	I have been fit to be loved.
Pluperfect.	<i>Amandus fueram,</i>	I had been fit to be loved.
1st Future.	<i>Amandus ero,</i>	I shall be fit to be loved.
2nd Future.	<i>Amandus fuero,</i>	I shall have been fit to be loved.

This *Conjugatio Periphrastica*, which is formed by means of the participle future active and the auxiliary verb *esse*, is peculiar to the Latin language, and is used to express an *intended* action; or, in the case of intransitive verbs, a state or condition which is to come to pass. It has its six tenses like the ordinary conjugation. The realization depends either on the will of the subject or on that of others, or upon circumstances. In the first case, we say in English, "I intend," or am on the point of," and in the others, "I am to" (be, or do a thing), *i. e.*, others wish that I should do it; *e. g.*, *scripturus sum*, I intend writing, or am to write; *scripturus eram*, I intended writing, or was to write; *scripturus fui*, I have been intending to write, &c.

The participle future passive in *ndus*, or the participle of necessity, in combination with the tenses of the verb *esse*, forms another distinct conjugation denoting *future necessity* and not future suffering, for *epistola scribenda est*, for example, does not signify "the letter is about to be written," which is expressed by the simple future *epistola scribetur*, but "the letter must be written," there being either an internal or external necessity for its being written, either of which is expressed in English by "the letter is to be written." This conjugation may accordingly be regarded as the passive of the *conjugatio periphrastica*.—*Zumpt*.

CONJUGATION OF A DEPONENT VERB.

Deponent Verbs have a Passive form and an Active signification.¹

Deponents are divided into *Transitive Deponents*, as *Utōr*, I use ; and *Intransitive Deponents*, as *Irāscōr*, I am angry.²

Transitive Deponents are the only Latin Verbs which have a Perfect Participle Active, as *usūs*, having used.

The *Transitive Deponents*, in addition to the Passive forms, have also the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds. The Gerundive and the Perfect Participle occasionally are the only forms in the Deponent which ever have a Passive signification.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.

TRANSITIVE.

Ut-ōr, *ūt-ērīs v. ūt-ērē*, *ūs-ūs sūm v. fūī*, *ūt-ī*, *ūt-ēndī*, *ūt-ēndō*, *ūt-ēndūm*, *ūs-ūm*, *ūs-ū*, *ūt-ēns*, *ūt-ēndūs*, *ūs-ūs*, *ūs-ūrūs*, to use.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—do or am.

Sing. <i>Ut-ōr</i> ,	I use, do use, or am using
<i>ūt-ērīs v. ērē</i> ,	Thou usest, dost use, or art using
<i>ūt-itūr</i> ,	He uses, does use, or is using
Plur. <i>Ut-īmūr</i> ,	We use, do use, or are using
<i>ūt-īmīnī</i> ,	Ye use, do use, or are using
<i>ut-untūr</i> ,	They use, do use, or are using

1. They are called *verba deponentia* (literally laying aside, from *depono* because they lay aside the active form).—*Madvig*.

2. See the explanation of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, in page 61.

Preterimperfect Tense—did or was.

Sing.	Ut-ēbār, ūt-ēbāris v. ēbārē, ūt-ēbātūr,	I did use, or was using Thou didst use, or wast using He did use, or was using
Plur.	Ut-ēbāmūr, ūt-ēbāmīnī, ūt-ēbāntūr,	We did use, or were using Ye did use, or were using They did use, or were using

Preterperfect Tense—have.*Singular.*

Us-ūs sum vel fūi,	I used, or have used
ūs-ūs es v. fūistī,	Thou usedst, or hast used
ūs-ūs est v. fūit,	He used, or has used

Plural.

Us-i sūmūs v. fūimūs,	We used, or have used
ūs-i ēstīs v. fūistīs,	Ye used, or have used
ūs-i sūnt, fūērunt, v. ērē,	They used, or have used

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing.	Us-ūs ērām v. fūērām, ūs-ūs, ērās v. fūērās, ūs-ūs, ērāt v. fūērāt,	I had used Thou hadst used He had used
Plur.	Us-i ērāmūs v. fūērāmūs, ūs-i ērātīs v. fūērātīs, ūs-i ērānt v. fūērānt,	We had used Ye had used They had used

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing.	Ut-ār, ūt-ērīs v. -ērē, ūt-ētūr,	I shall or will use Thou shalt or wilt use He shall or will use
Plur.	Ut-ēmūr, ūt-ēmīnī, ūt-ēntūr,	We shall or will use Ye shall or will use They shall or will use

Future Perfect Tense—shall have.

Sing.	Us-ūs ēro v. fuēro, ūs-ūs ērīs v. fuērīs, ūs-ūs ērīt v. fuērīt,	I shall have used Thou shalt have used He shall have used
Plur.	Us-i ērīmūs v. fuērīmūs, ūs-i ērītīs v. fuērītīs, ūs-i ērunt v. fuērint,	We shall have used Ye shall have used They shall have used

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Ut-ērě,	Use thou,
Plur.	Ut-īminī,	Use ye.

Future Tense.

Sing.	Ut-ītor,	Thou shalt use.
	Ut-ītōr,	He shall use.
Plur.	Ut-ūntōr,	They shall use.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD,

*Present Tense—may or can.**Singular.*

Ut-ār,	I may or can use
ut-ārīs v. ārě,	Thou mayest or canst use
ut-ātūr,	He may or can use.

Plural.

Ut-āmūr,	We may or can use
ut-āminī,	Ye may or can use
ut-āntūr,	They may or can use

*Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, or ought.**Singular.*

Ut-ērēr,	I might or could use
ūt-ērērīs v. ērērě,	Thou mightest or couldst use
ut-ērētūr,	He might or could use

Plural.

Ut-ērēmūr,	We might or could use
ut-ērēmīnī,	Ye might or could use
ut-ērētūr,	They might or could use

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have.

Singular.

Us-ūs sīm v. fūērīm,	I may have used.
ūs-ūs sis v. fūērīs,	Thou mayest have used
ūs-ūs sīt v. fūērīt,	He may have used

Plural.

Us-ī simūs v. fūērīmūs,	We may have used
ūs-ī sitīs v. fūērītīs,	Ye may have used
ūs-ī sint v. fūērint,	They may have used

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, would, should, or ought to have.

Singular.

Us-ūs ēssēm v. fūissem,	I might have used
ūs-ūs ēssēs v. fūissēs,	Thou mightest have used
ūs-ūs ēssēt v. fūissēt.	He might have used

Plural.

Us-ī ēssēmūs v. fūissēmūs,	We might have used
ūs-ī ēssētīs v. fūissētīs,	Ye might have used
ūs-ī ēssēt v. fūissēt,	They might have used

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect.

Ut-ī, to use.

Preterimperfect and Preterpluperfect.

Us-ūm ēssē v. fūisse, to have used.

Future Tense.

Us-ūrūm ēsse, to be about to use.

GERUND.

Ut-ēndī,	of using
Ut-ēndō,	in using
Ut-ēndum,	to use

SUPINES.

<i>First or Active,</i>	Us-ūm, to use
<i>Latter or Passive,</i>	Us-ū, to be used

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present Tense,</i>	Ut-ēns, using
<i>Preterperfect,</i>	Us-ūs, having used
<i>Future in dus,</i>	Ut-ēndūs, to be used
<i>Futurē in rus,</i>	Us-ūrūs, about to use

CONJUGATION OF A VERB DEPONENT.

INTRANSITIVE.

Irāsc-ōr, irāsc-ērīs, vel irāsc-ērĕ, irāt-ūs sūm vel fūi, irās-cī; irāsc-ēndī, irāsc-ēndō, irāsc-ēndūm; irās-scēns, irāt-ūs; to be angry (it wants the Supines).

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing.	Irāsc-ōr, irāsc-ērīs v. irāsc-ērĕ, irāsc-ītūr,	I am angry Thou art angry He is angry
Plur.	Irāsc-īmūr, irāsc-īmīnī, irāsc-ūntūr,	We are angry Ye are angry They are angry

Preterimperfect Tense.

Sing.	Irāsc-ēbār, irāsc-ēbārīs v. ēbārĕ, irāsc-ēbātūr,	I was angry Thou wast angry He was angry
Plur.	Irāsc-ēbāmūr, irāsc-ēbāmīnī, irāsc-ēbāntūr,	We were angry Ye were angry They were angry

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing.	Irāt-ūs sūm v. fūi,	I have been angry
	irāt-ūs ēs v. fūistī,	Thou hast been angry
	irāt-ūs ēst v. fūit,	He has been angry
Plur.	Irāt-i sūmūs v. fūimūs,	We have been angry
	irāt-i ēstīs v. fūistīs,	Ye have been angry
	irāt-i sūnt v. fūērūnt v. ērē,	They have been angry

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing.	Irāt-ūs ērām v. fūērām,	I had been angry
	irāt-ūs ērās v. fūērās,	Thou hadst been angry
	irāt-ūs ērāt v. fūērāt,	He had been angry
Plur.	Irāt-i ērāmūs v. fūērāmūs,	We had been angry
	irāt-i ērātīs v. fūērātīs,	Ye had been angry
	irāt-i ērānt v. fūērānt,	They had been angry

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing.	Irāsc-ār,	I shall or will be angry
	irāsc-ērīs v. ērē,	Thou shalt or wilt be angry
	irāsc-ētūr,	He shall or will be angry
Plur.	Irāsc-ēmūr,	We shall or will be angry
	irāsc-ēmīnī,	Ye shall or will be angry
	irāsc-entūr,	They shall or will be angry

Future Perfect Tense—shall have been.

Sing.	Irāt-ūs ērō v. fūērō,	I shall have been angry
	irāt-ūs ērīs v. fūērīs,	Thou shalt have been angry
	irāt-ūs ērit v. fūērīt.	He shall have been angry
Plur.	Irāt-i ērimūs v. fūērīmūs,	We shall have been angry
	irāt-i ēritīs v. fūērītīs,	Ye shall have been angry
	irāt-i ērūnt v. fūērīnt,	They shall have been angry

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Irāsc-ērē,	Be thou angry
Plur.	Irāsc-īmīnī,	Be ye angry

Future Tense.

Sing.	Irāsc-ītōr,	Thou shalt be angry
	irāsc-ītōr,	He shall be angry
Plur.	Irāsc-ūntōr,	They shall be angry

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing.	<i>Irāsc-ār,</i>	I may or can be angry
	<i>irāsc-ārīs v. āre,</i>	Thou mayest or canst be angry
	<i>irāsc-ātūr,</i>	He may or can be angry
Plur.	<i>Irāsc-āmūr,</i>	We may or can be angry
	<i>irāsc-āmīnī,</i>	Ye may or can be angry
	<i>irāsc-āntūr,</i>	They may or can be angry

Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, or ought to be.

Sing.	<i>Irāsc-ērēr,</i>	I might or could be angry
	<i>irāsc-ērērīs v. erēre,</i>	Thou mightst or couldst be angry
	<i>irāsc-ērētūr,</i>	He might or could be angry
Plur.	<i>Irāsc-ērēmūr,</i>	We might or could be angry
	<i>irāsc-ērēmīnī,</i>	Ye might or could be angry
	<i>irāsc-ērētūr,</i>	They might or could be angry

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have been.

Sing.	<i>Irāt-ūs sīm v. fuērīm,</i>	I may have been angry
	<i>irāt-ūs sīs v. fuērīs,</i>	Thou mayest have been angry
	<i>irāt-ūs sīt v. fuērīt,</i>	He may have been angry
Plur.	<i>Irāt-ī simus v. fuerimus,</i>	We may have been angry
	<i>irāt-ī sitīs v. fueritis,</i>	Ye may have been angry
	<i>irāt-ī sint v. fuerint,</i>	They may have been angry

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, would, should, or ought to have been.*Singular.*

<i>Irāt-ūs ēssem v. fuissem,</i>	I might have been angry
<i>irāt-ūs ēssēs v. fuissēs,</i>	Thou mightest have been angry
<i>irāt-ūs ēsset v. fuisset,</i>	He might have been angry

Plural.

<i>Irāt-ī ēssēmus v. fuissemus,</i>	We might have been angry
<i>irāt-ī ēssētīs v. fuissetis,</i>	Ye might have been angry
<i>irāt-ī ēssēt v. fuissēt,</i>	They might have been angry

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Irās-cī, To be angry.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Irāt-ūm ēsse v. fuisse To have been angry.

Future Tense.

Irāt-ūrūm ēsse, To be about to be angry.

GERUND.

Irāsc-ēndi, Of being angry

Irāsc-ēndō, In being angry

Irāsc-ēndum, To be angry

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.

Irāsc-cēns, Being angry.

Preter Tense.

Irāt-ūs, Having been angry.

Future in rus.

Irāt-ūrūs, About to be angry.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS.¹

The Irregular Verbs are those which deviate from the general rule in the formation of the Perfects and Supines, and also in their other Tenses.

There are Nine Irregular Verbs:—

Pössum, Völö, Nölö, Mälö, Edö, Fөрö, Fөрör,
Fіö, Eö, Qüeo.

1. Those Verbs are termed irregular, which vary from the usual form, not only in the formation of the perfect and supine, but also in the terminations of the tenses and the mode in which they are combined with the theme.—*Madvig.*

1. Pōssūm, pōtēs, pōtūi, pōssē,¹ to be able.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Pōssūm, pōtēs, pōtest.		Plur. Pōssūmus, pōtētīs, pōssūnt.
------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Pōtērām, pōtērās, pōtērāt.		Plur. Pōtērāmus, pōtērātīs, pōtērānt.
----------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Pōtūi, pōtuisti, pōtuit.		Plur. Pōtuīmus, pōtuistīs, pōtuērūnt.
--------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Pōtueram, pōtuerās, pōtuerat.		Plur. Pōtuerāmus, pōtuerātīs, pōtuerānt.
-------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Pōtērō, pōterīs, pōterīt.		Plur. Pōtērīmus, pōterītīs, pōterūnt.
---------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have been.

Sing. Pōtuerō, pōtuerīs, pōtuerīt.		Plur. Pōtuerīmus, pōtuerītīs, pōtuerint.
------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------

Pōssūm has no Imperative Mood.

1. *Possūm* is compounded of *potis*, able, and *sum*. These words are sometimes written separately, and *potis* is then the same in all Genders and Numbers. *Possūm* wants the Imperative and those parts which are derived from the Third Root. The principal parts in which Irregular Verbs vary from the Regular Verbs, are, in the Tenses derived from the Third Root.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing. Póssĭm, póssĭs, póssĭt.		Plur. Póssĭmus, póssĭtis, possint.
-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, or ought.

Sing. Póssēm, póssēs, posset.		Plur. Póssēmus, possētĭs, possēnt.
-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have been.

Sing. Pótuerĭm, pótuerĭs, pótuerĭt.		Plur. Pótuerĭmus, pótuerĭtis, pótuerĭnt.
-------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, &c., have been.

Sing. Pótuĭssem, pótuĭsses, pótuĭsset.		Plur. Pótuĭssēmus, pótuĭssētĭs, pótuĭssēnt.
----------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Póssě.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Pótũĭssě.

2. Völö, vīs, vöľü, vëľľ; vöľëndī, vöľëndō, vöľëndūm; vöľëns,¹ *to be willing*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Völö, vīs, vült,	Plur. Vöľūmus, vültis, vöľunt.
------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Vöľëbām, vöľëbās, vöľëbāt,	Plur. Vöľëbāmus. vöľëbatis, vöľëbant.
----------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Vöľüī, vöľuisti, vöľuit,	Plur. Vöľüīmus, vöľuistis, vöľuērūnt, v. ērē.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Vöľüērām, vöľuerās, vöľuerāt,	Plur. Voluerāmus, volueratis, voluerant.
-------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing. Vöľām, vöľës, vöľët,	Plur. Vöľēmūs, vöľëtīs, volënt.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have been.

Sing. Volüēro, voluērīs, voluērīt,	Plur. Volüērīmūs, volueritis, voluerint,
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

Volo has no Imperative Mood.

1. *Volo* is irregular only in the present indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect subjunctive. It becomes irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing.	Věľim, vēľis, vēľit.	Plur.	Velĭmus, velitis, velint.
-------	----------------------------	-------	---------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.

Sing.	Věľlem, vēľles, vēľlet,	Plur.	Věľlēmus, vēľlētis, vēľlēnt.
-------	-------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may have been.

Sing.	Voluerim, volueris, voluerit,	Plur.	Voluerĭmus, volueritis, voluerint,
-------	-------------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, would have been.

Sing.	Voluissēm, voluissēs, voluisset,	Plur.	Voluissēmus, voluissetis, voluissēnt.
-------	----------------------------------------	-------	---------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Věľě.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Věľűissě.

Present Participle.

Věľēns.

3. Nōlō, nōnvīs, nōlūī, nōllē; nōlēn-*dī* nōlēn-*dō*, nōlēn-*dūm*; nōlēns,¹ *to be unwilling*.

Nōlō is compounded of *non*, not, and *Vōlō*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Nōlo, nōnvīs, nōnvult,	Plur. Nōlūmus, nōnvultis, nōlūnt.
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Nōlēbām, nōlēbās, nōlēbāt,	Plur. Nōlēbāmus, nōlēbatīs, nōlēbant.
----------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Nōlui, nōluisti, nōluit,	Plur. Nōluimus, nōluistis, nōluerunt <i>v. ēre</i> .
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Nōluerām, nōlueras, nōluerat,	Plur. Nōluerāmus, nōlueratis, nōluerant.
-------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Nōlām, nōles, nōlet,	Plur. Nōlēmus, nōlētis, nōlent.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Future Tense.

Sing. Nōluero, nōlueris, nōluerit,	Plur. Nōluerīmus, nōlueritis, noluerint.
------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

1. *Non* drops its final *n*, *volo* drops its *v*, and the Vowels (*o o*) are connected into long *o*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Nōli		Plur. Nōlitē.
------------	--	---------------

Future Tense.

Sing. Nōlito, Nolito,		Plur. Nōlitōtē, Nōlunto.
--------------------------	--	-----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing. Nōlim, nōlis, nōlit,		Plur. Nōlīmūs, nōlitīs, nōlint.
----------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should be.

Sing. Nōllēm, nōllēs, nōllēt,		Plur. Nōllēmūs, nōllētīs, nōllēnt.
-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may have been.

Sing. Nōlūērim, nōlūērīs, nōlūērīt,		Plur. Nōlūērimūs, nōlūērītīs, nōlūērīnt,
-------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, &c., have been.

Sing. Nōluīssēm, nōluīssēs, nōluīssēt,		Plur. Nōluīssēmūs, nōluīssētīs, nōluīssēnt.
----------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Nōllē.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Nōluīssē.

Present Participle.

Nōlens.

4. Mālō, māvis, mālūi, mällē; mālēn-dī, mālēn-dō, mālēn-dūm; mālēns, *to have rather, or to be more willing.*¹

Mālō is compounded of *magis*, rather, and *volo*, I am willing.²

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Mālo, māvis, mavūlt,	Plur. Mālūmūs, mavūltīs, malūnt,
----------------------------------	----------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Mālēbām, malēbas, malebāt,	Plur. Mālēbamūs, malēbatīs, malēbant.
----------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Mālūi, malūisti, malūit,	Plur. Mālūimūs, malūistīs, malūērunt v. ērē,
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Mālūērām, malūēras, malūērāt,	Plur. Mālūērāmūs, malūēratīs, malūērant
-------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Mālām, malēs, malet,	Plur. Mālēmūs, mālētīs, mālēnt.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

1. *Possum, Volo, Nolo, and Malo* have no Future Infinitive.

2. In the process of this composition, *Magis* drops its final syllable, and *Volo* drops its *v*. The Vowels *a* and *o* are then contracted into *a*.

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have been.

Sing.	Mälüērō, maluerīs, maluerīt,	Plur.	Mälüērīmūs, maluerītīs, maluerint.
-------	------------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------------

Mālō has no Imperative Mood.

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing.	Mālīm, malīs, malit,	Plur.	Mālīmūs, malītīs, malint,
-------	----------------------------	-------	---------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might or could, &c., be.

Sing.	Mällem, mallēs, mallēt,	Plur.	Mällēmūs, mallētīs, mallēnt.
-------	-------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have been.

Sing.	Malüērīm, malueris, maluerit.	Plur.	Malüērīmūs, malueritis, maluerint.
-------	-------------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Mällē.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Mälüissē.

5. Edō, ēdis *v.* ēs, ēdī, ēdērē *v.* ēssē; ēdēn-
dī, ēdēn-dī, ēdēn-dō, ēdēn-dūm; ēsūm, ēsū, *v.*
ēstūm, ēstū; edēns, ēsūrūs *v.* ēstūrūs, *to eat.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—do or am.

Sing. Edō, ēdis <i>v.</i> ēs, ēdīt <i>v.</i> ēst.	Plur. Edīmūs, ēdītīs <i>v.</i> ēstīs, ēdūnt.
---------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—did.

Sing. Edēbām, ēdēbas, edēbāt,	Plur. Edēbāmūs, ēdēbātīs, ēdēbānt.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have.

Sing. Edī, ēdistī, ēdīt.	Plur. Edīmūs, ēdistīs, ēdērūnt, <i>v.</i> ērē.
--------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had.

Sing. Edērām, ēdērās, ēdērāt.	Plur. Edērāmūs, ēdērātīs, ēdērānt.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will

Sing. Edām, ēdēs, ēdet.	Plur. Edēmūs, ēdētīs, ēdēnt.
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have.

Sing. Edērō, ēdērīs, ēdērīt.	Plur. Edērīmūs, ēdērītīs, ēdērīnt.
------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. <i>Second Person—Ede or ēs; edīto or esto,</i> <i>Third Person—edīto or esto.</i>	
Plur. <i>Second Person—Edīte or este, edītote or estote,</i> <i>Third Person—edūnto.</i>	

SUBJUNCTIVE, OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing.	Edām, ēdas, ēdāt,	Plur.	Edamūs, ēdatīs, ēdant.
-------	-------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might or could, &c.

Sing.	Ederēm, <i>vel</i> essem, ederes, <i>vel</i> ēsses, ederet, <i>vel</i> esset,	Plur.	Ederemus <i>v.</i> essemus ederetīs <i>vel</i> essetis, ederent <i>vel</i> essent.
-------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may have.

Sing.	Edērīm, ēdērīs, ēdērīt.	Plur.	Edērīmūs, ēdērītīs, ēdērīnt.
-------	-------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, &c., have.

Sing.	Edissem, edissem, edisset.	Plur.	Edissemūs, edissetis, edisissent.
-------	----------------------------------	-------	-----------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present and Preterimperfect Tense.*Edērē *vel* ēssē.*Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.*

Edisse.

Future Tense.

Esūrum esse.

The verb *Edo* is declined regularly according to the third conjugation, but it has in some tenses, besides its regular forms, another similar to the corresponding tenses of *sum*. The *e* in the tenses of *edo* (which are formed, as if from *sum*) is long by nature.—*Zumpt*.

6. Fērō, fērs, tūlī, fērrē; fērēn-*dī*, fērēn-*dō*, fērēn-*dūm*; lātūm, latū; fērēns, lātūrūs, *to bear or suffer*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Ferō, fers, fert.	Plur. Ferīmūs, fērtīs, ferūnt.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Ferēbām, ferēbas, ferēbāt.	Plur. Ferebāmūs, ferebatīs, ferebant.
----------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Tūlī, tūlistī, tūlīt,	Plur. Tūlīmūs, tūlistīs, tūlerūnt v. tūlere.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Tulerām, tulerās, tulerāt.	Plur. Tulērāmus, tuleratīs, tulerant.
----------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Ferām, feres, feret.	Plur. Ferēmus, feretīs, ferent.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall have been.

Sing. Tulerō, tuleris, tulerīt.	Plur. Tulerīmus, tulerītīs, tulerint.
---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Fer,		Plur. Ferte.
------------	--	--------------

Future Tense.

Sing. Fertō, ferto,		Plur. Fertote, ferunto.
------------------------	--	----------------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing. Ferām, feras, ferāt.		Plur. Ferāmus, feratīs, ferant.
----------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, could, would, or should.

Sing. Ferrem, ferres, ferret.		Plur. Ferrēmus, ferretīs, ferrent.
-------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may have.

Sing. Tulerīm, tulerīs, tulerīt.		Plur. Tulerīmus, tulerītīs, tulerint.
----------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, &c., have.

Sing. Tulissem, tulisses, tulisset.		Plur. Tulissemus, tulissetīs, tulissent.
-------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing. Laturus sim, laturus sis, laturus sit,		Plur. Latūri simus, Latūri sitis, Latūri sint.
----------------------------------------------------	--	------------------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Ferre.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Tulisse.

Present Participle.

Laturum esse.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Imperfect Tense,</i>	Ferens.
<i>Future Tense,</i>	Latūrus (a, um).

SUPINES.

Latum,
Latu.

GERUND.

<i>Genitive,</i>	Fer-endi,
<i>Dative,</i>	Fer-endo,
<i>Accusative,</i>	Fer-endum,

Compounds of Fero, to be similarly conjugated.

Affĕro	(ad, fero),	attŭli,	allatum,	affere, to bring to.
Aufĕro	(ab, fero),	abstŭli,	ablatum,	aufferrĕ, to carry away.
Effĕro	(ex, fero),	extŭli,	ĕlatum,	efferrĕ, to bring out.
Infĕro	(in, fero),	intŭli,	illatum,	infernĕ, to carry into.
Offĕro	(ob, fero),	obtŭli,	oblatum,	offerĕ, to present.
Praefĕro	(prae, fero),	praetŭli,	praelatum,	praeferrĕ, to prefer.
Perfĕro	(per, fero),	pertŭli,	perlatum,	perferrĕ, to bear, to endure.
Refĕro	(re, fero),	{rĕtŭli, rettŭli,}	relatum,	rĕferrĕ, to bring back.

Fĕrĕr Passive of Fĕrĕ.

7. Fĕrĕr, fĕrris *vel* fĕrrĕ, lātŭs sŭm *vel* fŭi, fĕrrĭ, lātŭs, fĕrĕndŭs, to be borne or suffered.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing. Fĕrĕr,	Plur. Fĕrĭmur,
fĕrris v. ferre,	fĕrĭmĭni,
fertur.	fĕrŭntur.

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing. Fĕrĕbĕr,	Plur. Fĕrebamur,
ferebaris v. are,	ferebamĭni,
ferebatur.	ferebantur.

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing. Latus sum v. fui, latus es v. fuisti, latus est v. fuit.	Plur. Lati sumus v. fuimus, lati estis v. fuistis, lati sūnt, fuerunt vel fuere.
----------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing. Latus eram v. fueram, latus eras v. fueras, latus erat v. fuerat.	Plur. Lati eramus v. fueramus lati eratis v. fueratis, lati erant v. fuerant.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing. Ferār, ferērīs v. ferēre, ferētur.	Plur. Ferēmur, feremīni, ferentur.
------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have been.

Sing. Latus ero v. fuerō, latus eris v. fueris, latus erit v. fuerit.	Plur. Lati erimus v. fuerimus, lati eritis v. fueritis, lati erunt v. fuerint.
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Ferre.	Plur. Ferimini.
--------------	-----------------

Future Tense.

Sing. Fertōr, fertōr.	Plur. Feruntōr.
--------------------------	-----------------

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing. Ferār, ferārīs v. ferare, ferātur.	Plur. Feramur, feramini, ferantur.
------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, &c.

Sing. Ferrer, ferrērīs v. ferrere, ferrētur.	Plur. Ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
----------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have been.

Sing.	Latus sim <i>v.</i> fuerim, latus sis <i>v.</i> fueris, latus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit.		P. Lati simus <i>v.</i> fuerimus, lati sitis <i>v.</i> fueritis, lati sint <i>v.</i> fuerint.
-------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, &c., have been.

S.	Latus essem <i>v.</i> fuisset, latus esses <i>v.</i> fuissetis, latus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset.		P. Lati essemus <i>vel</i> fuissetis, lati essetis <i>v.</i> fuissetis, lati essent <i>v.</i> fuissent.
----	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect.

Ferri.

Preterimperfect and Preterpluperfect.

Lātum esse.

Future Tense.

Lātum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, Lātūs (a, um).
Gerundive, Fērendūs (a, um).

8. Fīō, fīs, fāctūs, sūm *vel* fūī, fīēri; fāctūs, fāciēndūs, *to be made or done.*

Fio is used as the Passive of *Facio*.¹

1. The *i* in *Fio* is made long, except in those parts in which *r* follows it.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing.	Fio, fis, fit.	Plur.	Fimus, fitis, fiunt.
-------	----------------------	-------	----------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing.	Fiēbam, fiebas fiebat.	Plur.	Fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.
-------	------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—have been.

Sing.	Factus sum <i>v.</i> fui, factus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, factus est <i>v.</i> fuit.	P.	Facti sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus, facti estis <i>v.</i> fuistis, facti sunt fuerunt <i>v.</i> fuere
-------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

S.	Factus erām <i>v.</i> fueram, factus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, factus erāt <i>v.</i> fuerāt.	P.	Facti eramus <i>v.</i> fueramus factus eratis <i>v.</i> fueratis factus erant <i>v.</i> fuerant.
----	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will be.

Sing.	Fiām, fies, fiet.	Plur.	Fiemus, fietis, fient.
-------	-------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Future Tense.

Sing.	Factus erō <i>v.</i> fuerō, factus eris <i>v.</i> fueris, factus erit <i>v.</i> fuerit.	P.	Facti erimus <i>v.</i> fuerimus facti eritis <i>v.</i> fueritis, facti erunt <i>v.</i> fuerint.
-------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Fi, Fitē.

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can be.

Sing.	Fiām, fias, fiat.	Plur.	Fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
-------	-------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, &c.

Sing. Fierem, fieres, fieret.	Plur. Fieremus fieretis, fierent.
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may or can have been.

Sing. Factus sim v. fuerim, factus sis v. fueris, factus sit v. fuerit.	P. Facti simus v. fuerimus, facti sitis v. fueritis, facti sint v. fuerint.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, would, should, or ought to have been.

S. Factus essem v. fuisset, factus esses v. fuisses, factus esset v. fuisset.	P. Facti essemus v. fuissemus. facti essetis v. fuissetis, facti essent v. fuissent.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Fieri.

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Factum esset vel fuisset.

Future Tense.

Factum iri.

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect, Factus (a, um).

Gerundive, Faciendus (a, um).

NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

Several other Intransitive Verbs, besides *Fio*, form their Perfect Tenses after the manner of

Passives. The following are the Principal Neuter Passives:—

Audeo, ausus sum, audēre, *to dare*.
 Fido, fisis sum, fidēre, *to trust*.
 Gaudeo, gāvisus sum, gaudēre, *to rejoice*.
 Sōleo, sōlitus sum, sōlēre, *to be accustomed*.

Jūro, to swear, also sometimes makes *juratus sum* instead of *juravi*, and *cæno*, to sup, sometimes forms *cænatus sum* instead of *cænavi*.

8. Eö, is, ivi, irë ; ëün-dī, ëün-dō, ëün-dūm ;
 itūm, itū ; iens, itūrūs, *to go*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense—am.

Sing.	Eö, is, it.	Plur.	Imūs, itīs, ëünt.
-------	-------------------	-------	-------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—was.

Sing.	Ibām, ibās, ibāt.	Plur.	Ibāmūs, ibātīs, ibānt.
-------	-------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Preterfect Tense—have been.

Sing.	Ivi, ivistī, ivīt.	Plur.	Ivimūs, ivistīs, ivērūnt v. ivērë.
-------	--------------------------	-------	------------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—had been.

Sing.	Ivërām, ivërās, ivërāt.	Plur.	Ivërāmūs, ivërātīs, ivërānt.
-------	-------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will.

Sing.	Ibő, ibīs, ibīt.	Plur.	Ibīmūs, ibītīs, ibūnt.
-------	------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Future Perfect Tense—shall or will have.

Sing.	Ivėrő, ivėrīs, ivėrīt.	Plur.	Ivėrīmūs, ivėrītīs, ivėrint.
-------	------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	I.	Plur.	Itė.
-------	----	-------	------

Future Tense.

Sing.	Ito, Ito.	Plur.	Itőtė, Eunto.
-------	--------------	-------	------------------

SUBJUNCTIVE OR POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense—may or can.

Sing.	Eām, ėās. ėāt.	Plur.	Eāmūs. ėātīs, ėānt.
-------	----------------------	-------	---------------------------

Preterimperfect Tense—might, would, could, should, or ought.

Sing.	Irēm, irės, irėt,	Plur.	Irēmūs, irėtīs, irēnt.
-------	-------------------------	-------	------------------------------

Preterperfect Tense—may have.

Sing.	Ivėrīm, ivėrīmūs, ivėrīt,	Plur.	Ivėrīmūs, ivėrītīs, ivėrint.
-------	---------------------------------	-------	------------------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense—might, could, or would have.

Sing. Ivissēm,	Plur. Ivissēmūs,
ivissēs,	ivissētīs,
ivissēt,	ivissēnt.

Future Imperfect Tense—shall or will

Sing. Itūrūs sim,	Plur. Itūrī simūs,
ītūrūs sis,	ītūrī sitīs,
itūrūs sit,	ītūrī sint.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Irě,

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Ivissě.

Future Tense.

Itūrūm ěssě.

SUPINES.

Itum Itū.

Present Participle.

Iēns. *Genitive, ěuntīs.*

Compounds of Eo to be similarly conjugated.

The form in *ii* is used in preference to that in *ivi* in these Compounds:—

Ab-ěo, āb-ii, āb-ītum, *to go away*; ād-ěo, *to approach*; cō-ěo, *to join together*; ex-ěo, *to go out*; in-ěo, *to enter*; intēr-ěo, *to perish*; prae-ěo, *to go before*; praetēr-ěo, *to pass by*; rēd-ěo, *to return*; trans-ěo, *to cross over*.

Queo, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, are declined like *eo*, but without Imperative, Future Participle, or Gerund.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. <i>Queo</i> , quis, quit,	S. <i>Nequĕo</i> , non quis, non quit
Plur. <i>Quĕmus</i> , quitis, que- unt.	P. <i>Nequĕmus</i> , nequitis, ne- quĕunt.

This is the only Tense of these Verbs really in use.

Obs. The Present Participle (*quiens*, *queuntis*) is quite unused in ordinary language, and *quĕbam*, *quĕveram*, *quĕbo*, *nequĕbo*, are obsolete and rare forms. *Quis* and *quit* in the Present Indicative are used only with *non* (*non quis* and *non quit* for *nequis* and *nequit*); in general *queo* is used only in Negative Propositions, and far more rarely than *possum*.

In the older style a Passive form was sometimes used where an Infinitive Passive was subjoined; as *forma nosci non quita est* (Terence). —*Madvig*. Chapter xxii.

VERBS IRREGULAR CHIEFLY IN THE FORMATION OF THEIR PRETERITES AND SUPINES.

I.—THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the First Conjugation form the Preterite in *āvī*, and the First Supine in *ātum*. The following Verbs are Irregular:¹—

Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre, to give.
Sto,	stēti,	statum,	stāre, to stand.
Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpitum.	crēpare, to creak.
Cūbo,	cūbui,	cūbitum,	cūbare, to lie down.
Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmitum,	dōmare, to tame.
Sōno,	sōnui,	sōnitum,	sōnāre, to sound.
Vēto,	vētui,	vētūm,	vētāre, to forbid.
Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre, to thunder.
Mico,	micui,	—	micāre, to glitter.
Frico,	fricui,	frictum,	fricāre, to rub.
Plico,	plicui,	{ plicūm plicātum,	} plicāre, to fold.
Jūvo,	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre, to assist.
Sēco,	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{ lāvātum, lōtum, lautum,	} lāvāre, to wash.

Frequentative Verbs denote the frequent repetition of an action; they are all of the First Conjugation, and generally end in *ītō*; thus from *clāmo*, I exclaim, is formed *clāmītō*, I exclaim frequently, and from *rōgo*, I ask, is formed *rōgītō*, I ask frequently.

1. This Selection is compiled chiefly from *Zumpt*, Section xlii.—liv., and *Madvig*, Chapter xvii.—xxi. In order to facilitate the progress of the Pupil the list has been arranged so as to exhibit, in a concise form, those Verbs in particular, which are of frequent occurrence in Classical Authors usually read in Schools and Colleges.

II.—THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the Second Conjugation form the Preterite in *ŭi* and the First Supine in *ŭtum*. The following Verbs are irregular:—

These form the First Supine in—tum.

Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censere, to value,
Dŏceo,	dŏcui,	doctum,	dŏcere, to teach.
Teneo,	tenui,	tentum,	tēnere, to hold.
Misceo,	miscui,	{ mixtum, mistum,	{ miscere, to mix.
Sorbeo,	{ sorbui, sorsui,	{ —	sorbere, to suck up.
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum.	torrere, to burn.

These form the Preterite in—ēvi, and the Supine in—ētum.

Aboleo,	ābŏlēvi,	ābŏlitum,	ābŏlere, to abolish.
Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complere, to fill up.
Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlere, to destroy.
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flere, to weep.

Reduplicated Preterites..

Pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendere, to hang.
Mordeo,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	mordere, to bite.
Spondeo,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	spondere, to promise.
Tondeo,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	tondere, to shear.

These form the Preterite in—i, and the Supine in—tum.

Fāveo,	favi,	fautum,	fāvere, to favour. [tion
Cāveo,	cāvi,	cantum,	cāvere, to take precau-
Fŏveo,	fŏvi.	fŏtum,	fŏvere, to cherish.
Mŏveo,	mŏvi,	mŏtum,	mŏvere, to move.
Vŏveo,	vŏvi,	vŏtum,	vŏvere, to vow.

These form the Preterite in—i, and the Supine in—sum.

Video,	vīdi,	visum,	vīdere, to see.
Sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sēdere, to sit.
Strideo,	strīdi,	—	strīdere, to creak.
Prandeo,	prādi,	pransum,	prādere, to breakfast.

These form the Preterite in—si, and the Supine in—tum and sum.

Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augère, to increase,
Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardère, to blaze.
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgère, to indulge.
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquère, to twist.
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerère, to stick.
Jubeo,	jussi,	jussum,	jubère, to order.
Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānère, to remain.
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcère, to soothe.
Rideo,	risi,	risum,	ridère, to laugh,
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suasum,	suādère, to persuade.
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergère, to wipe.

These Verbs have no Supines.

Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgère, to shine.
Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcère, to be light.
Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgère, to mourn.
Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgère, to press.
Pāveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvère, to fear.
Ferveo,	{ fervi, ferbui, }	—	fervère, to boil.

III.—THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbère, to marry,
Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribere, to write,
Incumbo,	incūbui,	incūbitum,	incūmbère, to lie upon
Dico,	dixi,	dictum,	dicère, to say,
Dūco,	duxi,	ductum,	dūcère, to lead,
Cingo,	cinxī,	cinctum,	cingère, to surround,
Coquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquère, to cook,
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungère, to join,
Tēgo,	texi,	tectum,	tégère, to cover,
Traho,	traxi,	tractum,	trāhère, to drag,
Vēho,	vexi,	vectum,	vēhère, to carry,
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figère, to form,
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargère, to scatter,
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figère, to fix,
Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	āgère, to do,
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangère, to break,
Vinco,	vici,	victum,	vincère, to conquer,
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struère, to pile up,
Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivère, to live,
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	légère, to read,

Linguo,	liqui,	(lictum),	linquere, to leave,
Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere, to yield,
Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere, to send,
Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere, to shut,
D. vido,	divisi	divisum,	dividere, to divide.

Reduplicated Preterites.

Cado,	cēcidi,	cāsum,	cādere, to fall,
Caedo,	cēcidi,	caesum,	caedere, to cut,
Pendo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendere, to hang,
Parco,	pēperci,	parsum,	parcere, to spare,
Tango,	tētigi,	tactum,	tangere, to touch,
Disco,	didici,	—	discere, to learn,
Posco,	pōposci,	—	poscere, to demand,
Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallere, to deceive,
Pello,	pēpuli,	pulsum,	pellere, to drive,
Cāno,	cēcini,	cantum,	cānere, to sing,
Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	cūrrere, to run.

Inceptive or *Inchoative* Verbs express the beginning of an action. They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the Root of the Primitive, thus from *caleo*, I am warm, is formed *calesco*, I begin to grow warm.

Adolesco,	ādōlēvi,	ādultum,	ādolescere, to grow up
Cōalesco,	cōālui,	cōālītum,	cōalescere, to grow together
Convalesco,	convālui,	convalitum,	convalescere, to grow strong
Conticesco,	conticui,	—	conticescere, to be silent
Consenesco,	consenui,	—	consenescere, to grow old
Juvenesco,	—	—	jūvenescere, to grow young
Ingravesco,	—	—	ingravescere, to grow heavy
Mātūresco,	mātūrui,	—	mātūrescere, to grow ripe
Obmutesco,	obmūtui,	—	obmutescere, to grow dumb

Verbs in sco derived from forms no longer in use.

Cresco,	crēvi,	crētum,	crescere, to increase.
Nosco,	nōvi,	nōtum,	noscere, to know.
Pasco,	pāvi,	pastum,	pascere, to feed.
Quiesco,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescere, to be quiet,
Suesco,	suēvi,	suētum,	suescere, to become accustomed.

IV.—THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation form their Preterite in *īvī* and the Supine in *itum*. The following Verbs are irregular:—

Apērio,	āperui,	apertum,	āperire, to open.
Opērio,	ōperui,	ōpertum,	ōperire, to cover.
Fulcio,	fulsi,	fultum,	fulcire, to prop.
Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire, to draw up.
Saepio,	saepsi,	saeptum,	saepire, to fence in.
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire, to feel, to think.
Vincio,	vinxi,	vinctum,	vincire, to bind.
Eo,	ivi,	itum,	ire, to go.
Sālio,	sālui or sālii,	saltum,	sālire, to leap.
Sēpēlio,	sēpēlivi,	sepultum,	sepelire, to bury.
Amicio,	āmīcui or amixi,	āmictum,	āmīcire, to clothe.
Vēnio,	vēni,	ventum,	venire, to come.

Desiderative Verbs signify a desire of action. They are formed from the last Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as *cānatūrīo*, I desire to sup; *esūrīo*, I am hungry, or, I desire to eat.¹

Verbs which combine the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Cūpio,	cūpīvi,	cūpitum,	cūpere, to desire.
Cāpio,	cēpi,	captum,	cāpere, to take.
Fācio,	fēci,	factum,	fācere, to make.
Fūgio,	fūgi,	fūgitum,	fūgere, to flee.
Fōdio,	fōdi,	fossum,	fōdere, to dig.
Jācio,	jeci,	jactum,	jācere, to throw.
Pārio,	peperi,	partum,	pārere, to bring forth.
Quātio,		quassum,	quātere, to shake.
Rāpio,	rāpui,	raptum,	rāpere, to seize.
Peto,	petivi,	petitum,	petere, to seek.
Sarcio,	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire, to patch.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are those which are deficient in many of the usual Tenses and Persons.

Preteritive Defectives are those which are usually formed in the Preterite line only. The principal Preteritive Verbs are *Cæpī*, I began, *Ođī*, I hate, and *Měmīnī*, I remember. They are thus conjugated.

1. *Cæpī*, *cæpĕram*, *cæpĕro*, *cæpĕrim*, *cæpisse*, *cæpissĕ*, *cæptūrūs*.

2. *Ođī*, *ođĕram*, *ođĕro*, *ođĕrim*, *ođisse*, *ođissĕ*, *osūrūs*.

3. *Měmīnī*, *měmīnĕram*, *měmīnĕro*, *měmīnĕrim*, *měmīnissem*, *měmīnisĕ*.

Memīnī has no Participle, but it has a Future Imperative ; *Singular*, *Memento*. *Plural*, *Měmentōte*.

Obs. These Verbs are perfects of obsolete presents. In meaning, *měmīni* and *ođī* are presents. Hence the pluperfect has the meaning of an imperfect: *memīneram*, I remembered; *oderam*, I hated, not "I had hated," and the future perfect has the signification of a simple future, e.g., *odero*, I shall hate; *meminero*, I shall remember.—*Zumpt*.

Inquam, say I:—

INDICATIVE.		<i>Fut -Imperf.</i>	<i>Preterite.</i>
<i>Pres. Tense.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	—	—
<i>Inquam</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbam</i>	<i>Inquīēs</i> ,	<i>Inquīstī</i>
<i>Inquīs</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbās</i>	<i>Inquīēt</i> ,	<i>Inquīt</i>
<i>Inquīt</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbāt</i>		
<i>Inquimus</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbāmūs</i>		
<i>Inquītīs</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbātīs</i>		
<i>Inquīunt</i> ,	<i>Inquīēbant</i>		
		IMPERATIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
		<i>Inquē</i> ,	2 <i>Pers.</i> <i>Inquīto</i>

Aīo, I say:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Present Tense.</i>		<i>Imperfect Tense.</i>	
S. Aiō,	—	S. Aiēbam	—
Aīs,	Aiās,	Aiēbās	—
Aīt,	Aiāt,	Aiēbāt	—
P. —	—	P. Aiēbāmūs	—
—	—	Aiēbātīs	—
Aiunt	Aiant,	Aiēbant	—

Present Participle, Aiens.

Obs. *Inquam* is used only *between* the words of a quotation; it cannot stand as the *first* word in a sentence; its parts are equivalent to our expressions, "says he," "say they." *Aīo* introduces an *oratio obliqua*; *Inquam* introduces an *oratio recta*.

Apāge, be gone.

Apāge is the Greek Imperative ἀπάγε of ἀπάγω, and is therefore joined with the Accusative: *apage istas sorores!* away with them! *apage te*, get thyself off, or, with the omission of the Pronoun, *apage*, begone!

Ave, hail!

<i>Imperative.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> Ave,	—	—	Avete, } —
	{ <i>Fut.</i> aveto.	—	—	
	<i>Infinitive,</i>		Avere.	

Obs. *Ave* is the Imperative from *aveo*, I desire.

Vale, farewell.

Imperative, Vale, valete.

Obs. *Vale* is the Imperative from *valeo*, I am well.

Salve, hail !

<i>Indic. Future</i> , —	Salvebis.	—	—	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> . { <i>Pres.</i>	Salve,	—	—	Salvete	—
{ <i>Fut.</i>	salveto,	—	—	salvetote	—
<i>Infinitive</i> .	Salvere.				

Obs. *Salve* and the other Imperatives here specified are introduced amongst the Defective Verbs, because they have different meanings from those of the original Verbs themselves.

Cedo, give me.

<i>Imperative</i> .	—	Cedo.	—	—	Cēdite	—
---------------------	---	-------	---	---	--------	---

Obs. This word is used as an Imperative in familiar language, for *da* and *dic*, both with and without an accusative. A plural *cette* for *cedite* occurs in old Latin. The complete Verb *cēdo*, I yield, has a long *e*.—*Zumpt*.

Quæso, I pray.

<i>Indic. Present</i> .	Quæso,	—	—	Quæsumus,	—
<i>Infinitive</i> .	Quæsere,			<i>Part.</i> Quæsens	

Obs. *Quæso* and *quaestumus* are different in form only from *quaero* and *quaerimus*. Both *quaeso* and *quaesumus* are, like the English 'pray,' inserted in a sentence—as *dic, quaeso, unde venias*, 'tell me, pray, whence you come.'

Faxo, or *faxim*.

<i>Indic. Future or</i>	} Faxo or	} faxis, faxit, Faximus, faxitis,
<i>Potent. Present.</i>		

Obs. *Faxo* is an old Second Future used for *fecero*, *Faxim* is an old Perfect Subjunctive used instead of *fecerim*.

Ausim, I may dare.

Singular.

Plural.

Indic, or *Potent*. *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*. — — — *Ausint*

Obs. *Ausim* is an old form of *audeam*, the Present Subjunctive of *audeo*.

Fari, to speak.

This very irregular Verb, with its compounds *affari*, *effari*, *profari*, is, generally speaking, more used in poetry than in prose. The third persons of the present *fatur*, *fantur*, the imperative *fare*, and the participle, *fatus*, *a*, *um*, occur most frequently. The ablative of the gerund, *fando*, is used in a passive sense even in prose, in the phrase *fando audire*, to know by hearsay. The first person *for*, and the subjunctive *fer*, *feris*, *fetur*, &c., do not occur.—*Zumpt*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are those which are used in the Third Person Singular only, and which do not admit of a *personal* subject.

In English they are generally preceded by the Pronoun *it*, particularly in the Active Voice: as, *delectat*, it delights.

They are thus conjugated:—

Delectat, *delectābat*, *delectāvit*, *delectavērat*, *delectābit*, *delectavērit*, *delectet*, *delectāret*, *delectavisset*, *delectavērit*, *delectāre*, *delectavisse*.

The Persons in the Active Voice are thus expressed in the Present Indicative, and in a similar manner in the other Tenses:—

<i>Tædet me,</i>	<i>it wearies me, or I am wearied.</i>
<i>Tædet tē,</i>	<i>it wearies thee, or thou art wearied.</i>
<i>Tædet eum,</i>	<i>it wearies him, or he is wearied.</i>
<i>Tædet nōs,</i>	<i>it wearies us, or we are wearied.</i>
<i>Tædet vōs,</i>	<i>it wearies you, or you are wearied.</i>
<i>Tædet eōs,</i>	<i>it wearies them, or they are wearied.</i>

Impersonal Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except *licet*, *libet*, *liquet*, and *placet*, which govern the Dative, as *mīhi licet*, it is lawful for me; *mīhi libet*, it pleases me.

Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, as *pugnātur*, it is fought, from *pugno*, I fight.

The Persons are then expressed by an Ablative Case with the Preposition *a* or *ab* following the Verb, as,

Present Indicative.

Pugnātūr ā mē,	it is fought by me,	or I fight.
Pugnātūr ā te,	—	thee, or thou fightest.
Pugnātūr āb ēō,	—	him, or he fights.
Pugnātūr ā nōbis,	—	us, or we fight.
Pugnātūr ā vōbis,	—	you, or ye fight,
Pugnātūr āb eis,	—	them, or they fight.

ADVERBS.

An Adverb is a word joined to a Verb, Noun or Adjective, in order to explain or qualify its signification.

An Adverb bears the same relation to a Verb, as an Adjective does to a Substantive.

Adverbs are generally formed from Adjectives and Participles, by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declension usually end in *ē*, as *bēnignus*, kind, *bēnignē*, kindly. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles

of the Third Declension usually end in *-tēr*, as *prūdēns*, prudent, *prūdēnter*, prudently.

Adverbs have no inflection except comparison.

Obs. 1. The great majority of Adverbs are Cases of Substantives Adjectives, and Participles.—*Donaldson*.

Obs. 2. Adverbs ending in *in* are generally derived from Nouns or Past Participles, as *passim*, *divisim*. Those ending in *itus* are formed from Nouns by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *itus*, as *antiquitus*, *funditus*. Adverbs ending in *o* are generally the Ablatives Singular of Adjectives or Participles, as *tuto*, *merito*.

CONJUNCTIONS.

A Conjunction is a part of speech that joins together (*conjungit*) words and sentences, as *frater et soror*, brother and sister.

Conjunctions may be divided, in reference to their signification, into various classes, the most usual of which are the following:—

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, and; *etiam*, *quoque*, *item*, also. Also their contraries, *nec*, *neque*, *neu*, *neve*, neither, nor.
2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, either, or.
3. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed*, *verum*, *autem*, *at*, *atqui*, but; *tamen*, *attamen*, *veruntamen*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
4. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itaque*, therefore; *quapropter*, *quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *quandoquidem*, since.
5. CONDITIONAL; as, *si*, *sin*, if; *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquidem*, if indeed.
6. EXCEPTIONAL or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni*, *nisi*, unless, except.
7. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover.
8. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirum*, etc., to wit, namely.

Obs. The difference between *et* and *que* is this: *et*, like the Greek *καί*, is copulative; *que*, like *καί*, adjunctive: *et* brings into combination things before unconnected and independent; *que* adds what belongs to a thing, and naturally goes with it.—*Zumpt*.

PREPOSITIONS.

Some Latin Prepositions govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

Ad,	to or at.	Juxtā,	near.
Adversūs,	} against.	Ob,	on account of.
Adversum,		Penes,	in the power of.
Antē,	before.	Per,	by or through.
Apūd,	near.	Pōne,	behind.
Circa, circum	around.	Post,	after.
Circitēr,	about.	Praeter,	beside.
Cis & citrā,	on this side of.	Prope,	near.
Contrā,	against, contrary to.	Propter,	on account of
Ergā,	towards.	Secundum,	following, according to.
Extrā,	outside of.	Suprā,	above.
Infrā,	below.	Trans,	across.
Intēr,	between, among.	Ultra,	beyond.
Intrā,	inside of, within.	Versūs,	towards.

Apud, which is compounded of *ab* and *ad*, combines the meanings of these two Prepositions; it may generally be rendered by "at" or "with," and always take the Accusative.—*Donaldson*.

Circa, circum, round, round about. (*Circum amicos, urbes, insulas*, to the friends, in the towns, in the islands round about.)

Circiter, towards, about (of time; *circiter horam octavam*.)

Erga, towards, (generally of a friendly way of feeling or acting).—*Madvig*.

Versus, towards, is placed after the Noun.—*Zumpt*.

Versus alone may be used with names of places, as, *Brundusium versus*, "towards Brundusium".—*Donaldson*.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE ONLY.

A, āb, or abs,	from or by.	E or ex,	out of.
Absque,	without.	Prae,	before, in compari- son with.
Clam,	secretly, without the knowledge of.	Prō,	before, for, on be- half of.
Cōram,	in presence of.	Sīne,	without.
Cum,	with.	Tenūs,	up to, as far as.
Dē,	down from, from, concerning.		

Ab, a, from. (*Ab*, is always used before Vowels, and often before Consonants, *a* only before Consonants; before *te*, *abs* is also used, as *abs, te*.)

Absque, without (antiquated; *absque te si esset*, if it were not for you).

Ex, e, out of. (*Ex*, before Vowels and Consonants, *e* only before Consonants.)

Tenus, up to (is put after its case: *pectore tenus*).—*Madvig*.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING EITHER THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.

In,	in, into.	Sūper,	over.
Sūb,	up to, under; (when used of time), about.	Subter,	under.

Obs. *In* generally governs an Accusative when it signifies motion, and an Ablative when it denotes rest.

Sub, "under," and *super*, "above," take the Accusative when they denote motion, and the Ablative when they imply rest. *Supra*, "above" is always used with the Accusative, and *subter*, "under," generally with the Accusative, but occasionally with the Ablative.—*Donaldson*.

Prepositions express primarily the relation of *place*, and also the relations of *time* and *causality*.—*Arnold*.

Am, amb, com, con, di, dis, ne, re, se, ve, are called inseparable Prepositions, as they are used only in composition. There are other inseparable affixes, as *in* in *invictus*. Prepositions are sometimes used as Adverbs, as *circiter, contra, prae, propter*; thus, *I prae*, Terence, properly, *prae me*.

Ergo, for the sake of, and *instar*, in the manner of, govern a Genitive.—*Valpy*.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS. No. 8.

1. What do you mean by "Deponent Verbs?" Why are these Verbs so called? Into what classes are Deponent Verbs divided? Mention some differences between Deponents Transitive and Deponents Intransitive.
2. What do you mean by the term "Irregular Verbs?" Can you specify any of these? Explain the reasons on account of which you consider any of these Verbs to be "Irregular." Specify those "Irregular Verbs" which have no Imperative. Can you mention any peculiarities with regard to *Fio* or *Edo*?
3. What do you mean by "Defective Verbs?" Why are they so called? Can you specify any of them? What is the difference between *Inquam* and *Aio*? Can you mention any peculiarity with regard to *faxim—quæso—cedo—apage—salve* and *vale*?
4. What do you mean by Impersonal Verbs? Conjugate *delectat*. In the Active Voice how are the Persons expressed through the medium of Impersonal Verbs? Give an example. Shew the manner in which Intransitive Verbs can be used Impersonally. Shew also how the Persons can be expressed by Intransitive Verbs in the Passive Voice.
5. What do you mean by an "Adverb?" How are Adverbs generally formed in Latin? Are Adverbs capable of Inflection? What is the only Inflection which they admit of? What do you mean by a "Conjunction?" Give instances of Conjunctions.
6. What Cases do Latin Prepositions generally govern. Mention some Prepositions which govern an Ablative, and some which govern an Accusative. Mention some Prepositions which govern both an Accusative and an Ablative. Distinctly specify the circumstances under which they govern these Cases respectively.
7. According to *Arnold*, what do Prepositions primarily imply? Give instances of Inseparable Prepositions. Why are they so called? Give instances of words which are used sometimes as Prepositions and sometimes as Adverbs.

INTRODUCTORY EXPLANATION

OF

SOME TERMS USED IN SYNTAX.

A *Proposition* is a sentence in which something is asserted or denied.

The Parts of a Proposition are, the Subject, the Predicate, and the Copula.

The Subject is the person or thing, about which an assertion is made. It is either a Substantive, or equivalent to a Substantive.

The Predicate is the assertion made concerning the Subject.

The Copula is the connecting link which joins the Subject with the Predicate. The following examples illustrate these remarks; *Puer est bonus*, the boy is good; *Pericūlum est magnum*, the danger is great.

Here *Puer* the boy is the *Subject*; *est* is the connecting link or Copula; and the assertion made about *puer* the boy, is that he is *bōnus*, good; consequently *bōnus* is the Predicate. Similarly, *Pericūlum*, the danger, is the Subject; *est* is the Copula; and *magnum* is the Predicate.

The Nominative Case is the Subject of the Verb. Sometimes the Verb includes both Predicate and Copula, thus in the sentence, *Puer legit*, the boy reads; *puer* the boy is the subject, and the Verb *legit*, reads, includes both Predicate and Copula, being equivalent to "is reading."

An Adjective may be either a *Predicate* or an *Attribute*; thus if we say *Puer est bonus*, the boy is good; *bonus*, is the Predicate. But if we say, *Puer bonus legit*, the good boy reads; then *bonus* becomes an attribute of *puer*, and *legit* is the Predicate.

. In order to avoid embarrassing the beginner, the other Terms used in Syntax are arranged and explained under their respective Rules.

SYNTAX.¹

The absence of inflexions in English compels us to arrange the words of a sentence in their grammatical order. But in the Classical languages, the connexion and construction of words are easily recognized by their inflexions; and they are accordingly arranged in their metaphysical order.—*Wilkins' Latin Prose Composition*.

Syntax is the grammatical construction and arrangement of words in a sentence.

Syntax consists of two great principles, Concord and Government.

Concord is the agreement between words in a sentence.

Government is the controlling power which one word exercises over another, such as causing it to be placed in a particular Case, Mood, or Tense.

1. In consequence of the reasons stated in the Preface, the Eton Latin Syntax, although containing much valuable matter, has long been considered as too diffuse in some respects, and deficient in others, and in many schools in which the Eton Grammar is an established Text-Book, the rules of Ruddiman or Valpy are used as substitutes for the Eton Syntax.

However, in justice to the Eton Latin Syntax, it must be acknowledged that it has suffered considerably at the hands of its Translators. The original arrangement *has been most injudiciously altered*, and the very language of the translations is quaint and obsolete—not suited for a boy's comprehension, nor adapted for being retained in the memory.

The following Syntax is the result of a careful comparison of the original Eton Latin Syntax with the works of Ruddimann, Valpy, Donaldson, Arnold, Madvig, Zumpt, Dr. Smith, Dr. Kennedy, and other eminent Grammarians.

It is designed that the Pupil should first learn the Rules only. The advanced Student will find additional information in the Annotations or the Notes.

CONCORDS.

There are three ConCORDS ; the first, between the Nominative Case and the Verb ; the second, between the Substantive and the Adjective ; the third, between the Antecedent and the Relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

RULE I.

A Personal Verb agrees with its Nominative Case in Number and Person: as,

Puer legit, the boy reads. *Pueri Scribunt*, the boys write.

EXPLANATION.—Here the Nominative Case, *puer*, “the boy,” and the Verb, *legit*, “reads,” are said to agree, both being of the Third Person and Singular Number. The words, *pueri* and *scribunt*, also agree, both being of the Third Person and Plural Number.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The Personal Pronouns are seldom expressed as Nominative Cases to the Verb, unless for the sake of distinction or emphasis, since the Person-endings of the Latin Verb, even alone sufficiently indicate the Person. Thus we would know from the terminations *as* and *atis*, that the words *am-as* and *am-atis* are of the Second Persons Singular and Plural respectively.
2. Sometimes a sentence is the Nominative Case to a Verb, as,
Tantæ molis erat Romanam condere gentem.—Virgil.
It was (a work) of such vast difficulty to establish the Roman nation.
3. Sometimes the Infinitive Mood of a Verb is used as a Neuter Substantive in the Nominative, as,
Diluculo surgere saluberrimum est,
To rise early in the morning is most wholesome.
4. A Noun, when placed in apposition with a Pronoun of the First or Second Person, requires a Verb of the First or Second Person ; as,

Hoc tibi Juventus Romana indicimus bellum.—Livy.

(We) the Roman youth proclaim this war against thee.

5. Sometimes an Adverb, connected with a Genitive Case, is used as a Nominative to a Verb, as,

Neque multum æstatis superesset.

Not much of the Summer was remaining.

RULE II.

Two or more Nominatives Singular require a Verb Plural;¹ as,

Furor iraque mentem præcipitant.—Virgil.

Fury and anger deprive me of my reason.

RULE III.

When Nominatives of different Persons come together, the verb agrees with the First Person rather than the Second, and with the Second Person rather than the Third, as,

Ego et Cicero valēmus.—Cicero.

I and Cicero are well.

Obs. 1. In Grammatical Latinity, the First Person is said to be "more worthy" than the Second Person, and the Second "more worthy" than the third. The English and the Latin usage are in this particular,

1. This rule holds good, whether the Subjects are united by Copulative Conjunctions, *et, ac, que, &c.*; or without Conjunctions, by *Asyndeton*, as, *Pompeius, Lentulus, Scipio fœde perierunt* (Cicero); or by means of the Preposition *cum*: as *Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt.*—Virgil. When they are united by the Particles, *aut, nec*, the Verb is generally singular: as, *Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret.*—Cicero. *Q. Catulum neque periculi tempestas, neque hominis aura, potuit unquam de suo cursu vitæ demovere.*—Cicero. But sometimes the Verb is plural: as, *Sulpicius aut Cotta plus quam ego apud te valere videntur.*—Cicero. *Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus.*—Terence.—*Dr. Kennedy.*

Two or more connected subjects of the third person singular take the predicate in the plural, if importance be attached to the number as well as to the connection, which is generally the case with living beings: *Castor et Pollux ex equis pugnare visi sunt* (Cicero); *pater et avus mortui sunt* (both of them). Also when persons and things are connected: *Syphax regnumque ejus in potestate Romanorum erant* (Livy); in the singular, when the subjects are considered collectively as a whole, e. g. *senatus populusque Romanus intelligit* (Cicero); this is often the case with things and impersonal ideas one idea being expressed by several words, or several ideas which are connected being considered as one, e. g. *Tempus necessitasque postulat.*—Cicero. But when the things and ideas are expressed as distinct and opposed, the Verb stands in the plural, e. g. *Jus et injuria natura dijudicantur* (Cicero).—*Madvig.*

exactly opposed to one another. In English, the speaker through courtesy considers himself "less worthy," and consequently places himself last. In English we would say, "Cicero and I are well." Arnold justly remarks that, when Cardinal Wolsey used the expression, "*Ego et rex meus*," he shewed that he was a good Latin Scholar, but a bad English courtier.

Obs. 2. Sometimes the Verb agrees with the last Nominative; as, *Ego et Cicero meus flagitabit.*—Cicero. I and my (friend) Cicero shall ask it.

Obs. 3. A Verb between two Nominatives of different Numbers may agree with either; as, *Omnia Pontus erant* or *erat.*—Ovid. All things were sea.

RULE IV.

A Collective Noun Singular *may* have a Verb Plural, in Latin as well as in English;¹ as,

Turba ruunt.—Ovid.

The multitude rush.

Obs. In English, when a Collective Noun conveys *unity* of idea it requires a Verb Singular; when it conveys *plurality* of idea, it requires a Verb Plural.

RULE V.

The Infinitive Mood, instead of a Nominative, requires an Accusative Case before it,² as,

Gaudeo te valēre.

I rejoice that you are well.

Obs. The Infinitive is sometimes placed after the Nominative. This is called the *Historical Infinitive*, since it is frequently employed by Historical writers, in order to give animation to the narrative by the omission of the Copula. The Ellipsis is supplied, according to most Grammarians, by the word "*cæpit.*" But (as Dr. Kennedy justly remarks), the Verb of *beginning* will not always suit the sense of supplied; as, *Ingenium ejus haud absurdum; posse versus facere, jocum movere.*—Sallust.

1. A *Collective Noun* is a name which in the Singular number denotes more than one; as, *exercitus*, an army; *classis*, a fleet; *multitudo*, a multitude.

2. As it is essential for the Pupil to clearly understand the difference between the English and Latin Infinitives, and the various modes of rendering the word *THAT* into Latin, he should carefully peruse the Extracts under the First Rule for the Government of Verbs, in which he will find these Subjects clearly explained.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

THE SUBSTANTIVE AND THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE I.

Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case;¹ as,

Puer bōnūs, a good boy.

Matri dīlēctæ, for a beloved mother.

Ob prēmīā nostrā, on account of our rewards.

EXPLANATION.—Here the Substantive, *pŭer*, "a boy," is Masculine, therefore its adjective *bōnūs*, "good," is also Masculine; *pŭer*, is of the Singular number, therefore *bōnūs* is also Singular; *puer* is the Nominative Case, therefore *bōnūs* is also in the Nominative Case. Similarly, the word, *matri*, "for a mother," is Feminine, therefore the Participle, *dīlēctæ*, is also Feminine; *matri* is the Dative case, therefore the Participle, *dīlēctæ*, is also in the Dative Case. So also *prēmīa* is in the Accusative Plural Neuter (being governed by the Preposition *ob*), therefore its Pronoun, *nostrā*, is also in the Accusative Plural Neuter.

RULE II.

Two or more Substantives Singular, not in apposition, require an Adjective Plural;² as,

Sicilia Sardinīaque amissæ.—Livy.

Sicily and Sardinia were lost.

1. An Adjective, whether Predicate or Epithet, agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as *Deus est bonus*, "God is good," *celeres equi*, "swift horses;" where *bonus* is the Predicate of *Deus*, and *celeres* is a descriptive epithet.—Donaldson.

2. In these Rules (according to the conventional usage of Grammarians) the term Adjective includes all Parts of Speech which come under the denomination of Adjectives, i.e., Participles, Pronouns, etc.

RULE III.

When the Substantives are of different genders, the Adjective agrees with the Masculine Substantive, rather than the Feminine, and generally with the Feminine Substantive, rather than the Neuter; as,

Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt.—Terence.
My father and mother are dead.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. If the Substantives (although Masculine or Feminine) express things without life, the Adjective may be of the neuter gender:¹ as,

Arcus et cālāmi sunt bona.
The bow and arrows are good.

2. An Adjective between two Substantives of different Genders may agree with either; as,

Paupertas mihi onus visum, or visa est.—Terence.
Poverty seemed a burden to me.

3. Sometimes the Adjective agrees with the last Substantive; as,

Salus, liberi, fama, fortunæ sunt carissimæ.—Cicero.
Life, children, honor and riches are dearest.

4. A Sentence, or a clause of a Sentence, or an Infinitive Mood, sometimes supplies the place of a Substantive, and the Adjective is then put in the Neuter Gender; as,

Non est mentiri meum.
It is not my (habit) to tell a falsehood.

Te non istud audivisse mirum est.—Cicero.
That you have not heard that, is wonderful.

5. Sometimes, when *Persons* are denoted by Neuter Substantives, the Adjective is put in the Masculine or Feminine Gender;² as,

Millia triginta servōrum capti sunt.
Thirty thousand slaves were taken.

1. Even with connected subjects of the same gender, which are *not living beings*, the predicate, when the plural is used, is often in the neuter: *Ira et varitia imperio potentiora erant* (Livy xxxvii. 32). *Nox atque praeda hostes emorata sunt* (Sall. Jug. 38).—*Madvig*.

2. The Gender of the Adjective or Pronoun is sometimes determined by the sense, (*per synesim*.) and not by the grammatical rule; e. gr. *Is scelus* (or *scelustus homo*).—*Terence*. *Magna pars hominum vulnerati aut occisi sunt.*—*Zumpt*.

6. The Substantive is frequently omitted.

The most remarkable of these ellipses are : *calida, frigida, gelida, (aqua)* ; *hiberna, æstiva, stativa (castra)* ; *dextra, sinistra, læva (manus)* ; *Latinae (feriæ)* ; *Circenses (ludi)* ; *biremis, triremis (navis)* ; *repetundarum (pecuniarum)* ; *prætecta (toga)* ; *primæ, secundæ (partes)* ; *ferina (caro)*.

The word *homines* is also frequently omitted ; as,

Boni sunt rari.—Good (men) are scarce.

Neuter Adjectives are frequently considered as substantives, as,

Multa me impediunt.—Many (things) hinder me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

THE ANTECEDENT AND THE RELATIVE.

RULE I.

The Relative *Qui, quæ, quod* agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not necessarily in Case ; as,

Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur.

The man is wise who speaks little.

Obs. 1. The Antecedent (from *ante*, before, and *cedo*, to go) is that word or sentence going before, to which the Pronoun relates.

In the foregoing example the Relative *qui* agrees with its Antecedent, *vir* ; in Gender and Number.

Obs. 2. The Case of the Relative depends on its connection with the words of the sentence in which it stands.

RULE II.

If no Nominative come between the Relative and the Verb the Relative is the Nominative to the Verb ; as,

Puer qui scribit.

The boy who writes.

Obs. Here no Nominative comes between the Relative *qui* and the Verb *scribit*, therefore the Relative *qui* is the Nominative to the Verb *scribit*.

RULE III.

If a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative is governed by the Verb, or Preposition, or some other word in the Relative clause of the Sentence;¹ as,

Deus quem colimus.

God whom we worship.

A quo facta sunt omnia.

By whom all things were made.

Deus, cujus nūmen adōro.

God, whose deity I adore,

EXPLANATION.—In the first example *quem* is the Accusative Case, governed by the Verb *colimus*,

In the second example *quo* is the Ablative Case governed by the Preposition *a*.

In the third example *cujus* is in the Genitive Case, because it agrees with *Dei* understood: that is, with that *case* of the antecedent which would be repeated, if the sentence were filled up; as,

Deus, cujus Dei nūmen adōro.

The God, of which God, I adore the Deity.

Hence may be deduced a general Rule for the Case of the Relative.

The Relative is put in the same case in which the antecedent would be put if it were repeated in the relative clause of the sentence.

Arnold on the Relative.

The use of the Relative is, to prevent the same Substantive from being expressed in each clause.

The apple which you gave me. (The apple, *which apple* you gave me). The mountain on *whose* top, &c. (The mountain, on the top of *which mountain*). The man *who* did this, &c. (The man, *which man* did this).

The *case* of the Relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

The Relative must be governed, as to *case*, by the Verb (or some other governing word) of *its own sentence*.

Is, ea, id, is the regular Antecedent Pronoun to *qui*.—*Henry's First Latin Book*.

1. The Relative is included in the Rules for the Concord of the Adjective—*Valpy*.

Zumpt on the Relative (Section LXVI).

If the Relative has more than one Antecedent, of different Genders, the same rule applies as to the Adjective,

Ninus et Semiramis, qui condiderunt Babylona.

If a Verb, or whole clause, is referred to, it is considered as of the Neuter Gender, and *id quod* is frequently used instead of *quod*.

Nec minus vellent te, Cato, aliqua ratione tollere; id quod, mihi crede, et agunt et moliantur.

The Relative often stands alone, a Noun being understood, from which it takes its Gender and Number.

Qui bene latuit bene vixit.

The Relative often precedes the Noun to which it refers, which is then put in the same Case, and usually followed by *is* or *hic*, which are necessary, if the Verbs govern different Cases.

Quas ad me dedisti literas accepi.

If an Appellative and a proper name of different Genders in apposition, are contained in the proposition to which the Relative refers, it may take its Gender from either of them.

Flumen est Arar quod in Rhodanum influit.—Cæsar.

The Relative sometimes takes its Gender and Number from the Personal Pronoun which is implied in the Possessive.

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui gnatum haberam tali ingenio prædixim.—Terence.

Tot, tantus, talis, quot, quantus, qualis, answer to each other, as the Demonstrative and Relative.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS ON THE THREE CONCORDS.

FIRST CONCORD.

1. How does a Personal Verb agree with its Nominative? Illustrate this by an example, and explain what you mean. Are the Personal Pronouns always expressed as Nominatives? Under what circumstances are they expressed? Can you mention any instances of other parts of Speech besides Substantives being used as Nominatives?
2. When there are two or more Nominatives Singular, in what Number is the Verb generally put? Can you mention any exceptions to this Rule? When there are Nominatives of different Persons, how is the Verb regulated? What do you mean by "the more worthy person?" Do the Latin and the English usage correspond in this particular?

3. How is the Verb regulated with regard to Number, when the Nominative is a Collective Noun? What do you mean by a Collective Noun? In English, when does a Collective Noun require a Singular, and when a Plural Verb? What Case does the Infinitive Mood require before it?

SECOND CONCORD.

How do Adjectives, Participles, and Pronouns agree with their respective Substantives? Give instances and explain them. When there are two or more Nominatives Singular, in what Number will the Adjectives be placed? Can you mention any peculiarities with regard to this Rule? Can you give instances of Substantives frequently omitted in the Second Concord?

THIRD CONCORD.

How does the Relative agree with the Antecedent? Must it always agree in Case with the Antecedent? Explain your meaning by examples. On what does the Case of the Relative depend? What general Rule may be given for ascertaining the Case of the Relative? Can you mention any of ARNOLD's directions with regard to the Latin Relative? Give some account of ZUMPT's directions with regard to the employment of the Latin Relative.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COPULATIVE VERBS.

RULE.

Copulative Verbs¹ (as *sum* and *fiō*), Passive Verbs of *naming* (as *dicor*, *appellor*), and most Neuter Verbs have the same Case both before and after them; referring to the same person or thing; as,

Ira furor brevis est.—Horace.

Anger is a temporary madness.

Cicero fit consul.

Cicero is appointed [as] Consul.

1. Copulative Verbs are so called because, like the Copula *sum* (I am), which is the principal of them, they connect the Subject and a distinct Predicate, which may be a Substantive or an Adjective. If an Adjective, it must agree with the Subject in Gender as well as Case. The chief of these Verbs, besides *sum*, are *fiō* (I become or am made), *nascor* (I am born), *videor* (I seem), &c., and Passives of *making*, *naming*, *declaring*, *choosing*, *thinking*, *finding*, &c., as *efficior*, I am made, *appellor*, I am called, *dicor*, I am said, etc.—Dr. Kennedy.

EXPLANATION.—*Est* is here used in a *copulative* sense, because it connects the two words, *Ira* and *Furor*; if we said “*is*” in the sense of *exists*, without any further addition, that is, there is such a feeling as anger; then *sum* would not be used as a *copulative* but as a Substantive Verb.

The words *before* and *after* them refer to the *grammatical construction* and *not to the actual position* of the Nominative with regard to the Copulative Verb. In the first example, *Ira* is the subject, *est* is the Copulative Verb, and the Predicate, “*brevis furor*”, although preceding it in the order of the words, is still the Nominative after the Copulative Verb, in the grammatical construction.

APPOSITION.

RULE.

Substantives referring to the same person, place, or thing, are put in the same case by *Apposition*; ¹ as,

Victoriā Regīna, Victoria the Queen.
Urbs Londinum, the City [of] London.

Obs. The pupil should carefully observe the difference of idiom, in the latter example; we say city of London, and city of Edinburgh (*urbs Edinburgum*).

ANNOTATIONS.

There are various kinds of Apposition, of which the following are the most usual.

1. The Apposition of Proper Names of one Person; as

Publius, Cornelius, Scipio Africanus.

2. That which limits the agency of the Subject with regard to *time*, *age*, &c., where the English Language generally employs the Conjunctions, *when* or *as*; e. g.,

Cicero prætor legem Manilianam suasit.

Cicero when prætor recommended the Manilian law.

Liber mihi puero placuit.

This book pleased me when a boy.

1. In placing “*the Construction of Copulative Verbs*” and “*Apposition*” after the *Concords* and before *Government*, I have followed the excellent arrangement of Dr. Kennedy.

3. Apposition to a Pronoun understood, as,

Hannibal peto pacem.—Livy.

"I, Hannibal, seek peace."

Here the Pronoun *ego* is understood.

4. Apposition of a Part to the whole, as,

Due filiae, harum, altera occisa, altera capta est.—Cæsar.

5. A Noun in Apposition to two or more Nouns is generally put in the Plural; as,

M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribunī plēbis.—Cæsar.

6. A Nominative is sometimes placed in Apposition to a Vocative; as,

Audi tu, populus Albanus.—Livy.

7. A clause of a Sentence may sometimes supply the place of one of the Nouns in Apposition; as,

Cogitet oratorem institui.—Quintilian.

Let him consider that an Orator is being trained—a difficult operation.

8. With regard to the Names of Towns, the annexed Noun is sometimes in the Genitive; as,

Urbs Patavii.—Virgil.

The City of Patavium.

This construction generally occurs when an Ablative is placed in Apposition to it; as,

Corinthis, Achaica urbe.—Tacitus.

At Corinth, a City of Achaia.

THE SYNTAX OF GOVERNMENT.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

RULE I.

One Substantive governs another in the Genitive Case, when their significations are different;¹ as,

Lex naturæ, the law of nature.

Castra hostium, the camp of the enemy.

1. The governed Genitive stands first, unless the governing Noun is Emphatic.—Arnold.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. This Genitive Case is sometimes changed into a Dative; as, *huic cervix*, his neck; *urbi pater est*, he is the father of the City.
2. Sometimes the Genitive Case alone is expressed, the former Substantive being understood by the figure *Ellipsis*; as, *adolescentis est*, (*officium* or *pars*, understood) it is (the duty) of a young man. So we say in English, "I am going to St. Paul's,"—I was at Mr. Smith's,"—these expressions being equivalent to "I am going to St. Paul's (Cathedral),"—"I was at Mr. Smith's (house)."
3. The Genitive is either *Subjective* or *Objective*: thus if we take the words, *injuriae Helvetiorum*, the injuries of the *Helvetii*; if we mean the injuries done *by* them, *Helvetiorum* is the Genitive *Subjective*, (because it is the *subject* of our assertion); if we mean the injuries done *to* them; *Helvetiorum* is the Genitive *Objective*, (because it is the *object* of our assertion). There is also the Possessive Genitive which is called *Attributive*, because it may be resolved into an Attributive Adjective; thus, *patris amor*, "a father's love," is equivalent to *paternus amor*, paternal love,
4. In English we have two forms of the Genitive, that with *of*, and that formed by the Apostrophe and *'s*. That formed by *of* is called the Norman or Analytic Genitive; that formed by the Apostrophe and *s* is called the Saxon or English Genitive; the Apostrophe marks the omission of *e*, *i*, or *y*; thus *God's*, *mirth's*, *man's*, are the remains of the Anglo-Saxon inflected forms, *Godes*, *mirthis*, *manneys*.

RULE II.

The Substantives, *opus* and *usus*, when signifying *need*, govern an Ablative Case; as,

Auctoritate tua nobis est.—Cicero.

We have need of your authority.

Obs. *Opus* is frequently constructed with Passive Participles and Supines in *u*; as, *Ita dictu opus est.*—Cicero. *Priusquam incipias, consulto opus est.*—Sallust. *Opus* is also used as a Predicate; as *Dux nobis et auctor opus est.*—Cicero.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADJECTIVES.

I.—THE GENITIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.

Adjectives signifying any *affection* or *passion* of the mind, and Verbal Adjectives in *ax* and *ns*, govern a Genitive Case;¹ as,

Avidus gloriæ. Desirous of glory.
Ignarus fraudis. Ignorant of fraud.
Memor beneficiōrum. Mindful of favours.
Tempus edax rerum. Time is the consumer of [all] things.
Patiens frigōris. Capable of enduring cold.²

RULE IV.

An Adjective in the Neuter Gender, without a Substantive, is considered as a Substantive, and governs the Genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ. Much money.
Quid rei? What is the matter?

1. To this Rule belong:—

1. Adjectives of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præscius, præsagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus, etc.*

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. Verbals in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax*: And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens, etc.*

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parvus, prodigus, prodigus, profusus, securus.*—*Ruddiman.*

2. The difference between Participles and Participials, or Participles used as Adjectives, is, that the former denote the action with the distinction of time; the latter signify the habit without regard to time. Thus *patiens frigoris* is applied to one who endures cold at some particular time; *patiens frigoris*, to one, who naturally or habitually endures it.—*Valpy.*

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The Neuter Adjectives, thus used, generally denote quantity: as *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plus*, *minus*, *dimidium*, *multum*, *plurimum*, *reliquum*. The Pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, and *quid*, with its compounds.
2. Most of these may either agree with their Nouns, or may take a Genitive; but the latter construction is more usual. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plus*, denoting quantity, are used with a Genitive only.
3. When Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are used with a Genitive, they are themselves generally in the Nominative or Accusative Cases.

RULE V.

Adjectives denoting a part of a greater number, Interrogatives, Numerals, and also Comparatives and Superlatives, when used partitively, govern a Genitive Case; as,

Aliquis philosophorum. Some one of the philosophers.

Senior fratrum. The elder of the brothers.

Doctissimus Romanorum. The most learned of the Romans.

Quis nostrum? Which of us?

Una Musarum. One of the Muses.

Octavus sapientum. The eighth of the wise men.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. Partitives generally require a *Genitive Plural*, with which they usually agree in Gender. Partitives take the Genitive Singular of Collective Nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in Gender; as, *Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis*.—Cicero. *Nympharum sanguinis una*.—Virgil.
2. When this Rule takes place, the Genitive may be resolved into *inter*, with the Accusative, or *de*, *e*, *ex*, with the Ablative; as, *Optimus regum*, the best of Kings, i. e., *Optimus inter reges*, or, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *regibus*,
3. The Comparative with the Genitive indicates one of *two* individuals or classes; the Superlative denotes a part of a number greater than *two*: as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of two brothers; *Maximus fratrum*, the eldest of three or more.
4. The Partitive word is sometimes omitted: as, *Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium* sc. *unus*.—Horace.
5. *Secundus* sometimes requires a *Dative*; as, *Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus*.—Virgil.
6. The Partitive Substantives, are, *Pars*, *nil*, *nemo*, etc.

II.—THE DATIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE VI.

Adjectives signifying advantage or disadvantage, likeness or unlikeness, or relation to any person or thing, govern the Dative; as,

Utilis bello. Profitable for war.

Perniciosus reipublicæ. Injurious to the commonwealth.

Similis cygno. Like a swan.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The Dative is joined with all Adjectives (and Adverbs) whose meaning is incomplete, unless a person or an object is mentioned for or against whom, or for whose benefit or loss the quality exists. Of this kind are those which express utility or injury, pleasantness or unpleasantness, inclination or disinclination, ease or difficulty, suitability or unsuitableness, similarity or dissimilarity, equality or inequality. Adjectives expressing a friendly or hostile disposition towards a person, sometimes take the Prepositions *in*, *erga*, *adversus*, instead of the dative; and *utilis*, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, generally take the Preposition *ad* to express the thing for which anything is useful or fit; e.g., *homo ad nullam rem utilis*; *locus aptus ad insidias*; but the person to or for whom a thing is useful or fit, is always expressed by the Dative.—*Zumpt*, Chap. lxxiii.
2. *Similis* and its compounds govern both the Genitive and Dative. The Genitive alone is used particularly with the names of living beings (especially gods and men).—*Madvig*. Chap. iii., sec. 247.
3. To this Rule belong Nouns compounded with the Preposition *con*; such as *commilito*, *contubernâlis*, *conservus*, etc., as *Huic conjux Sichæus erat*.—*Virgil*. Her husband was Sichæus.

RULE VII.

Verbals in *bilis* of a Passive Signification, and the Gerundive in *dus*, govern the Dative; as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus.

To be beloved of all men.

Obs. 1. Passive Verbs and Participles, generally, have an Ablative governed by the Prepositions *a* or *ab*; as *laudatur ab omnibus*, he is praised by all.

Obs. 2. Adjectives ending in—*bundus* of an active signification, govern the case required by the Verbs from which they are derived; as *populabundus agros*, "about to devastate the lands." Participles in—*bundus*, however, generally mean "full of", as *mirabundus*, "full of wonder." Although *Livy* uses *vitabundus castra*, and similar phrases; these Participles in—*bundus* do not in general govern any case.

III.—ACCUSATIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE VIII.

Adjectives¹ signifying dimension govern the Accusative of *measure*; as,

Turris centum pēdes alta.

A tower an hundred feet high.

Obs. The Genitive or Ablative are also used (but very rarely), after Adjectives signifying dimension; as, *Fons latus pedibus tribus*; *area lata pedum denūm*.

RULE IX.

An Accusative is sometimes put after Adjectives and Participles; where the Preposition *secundum* seems to be implied; as,

Os hūmērōsque Deo similis.

Like a God as to his face and shoulders.

ANNOTATION.

An Adjective, Verb, and Participle, are sometimes followed by an Accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as, *Nudus membra*, bare as to his limbs.—Virgil. *Fractus membra*.—Horace. *Maximam partem lacte vivunt*—Cæsar.

This is a Greek construction, and is usually called *Synecdoche* or the *Greek Accusative*. It is used instead of an Ablative of the part affected, and occurs most frequently in poetry.²

IV.—ABLATIVE CASE AFTER THE ADJECTIVE.

RULE X.

An Adjective signifying plenty or want governs the Ablative, or, the Genitive Case; as,

Dives agris.—Horace.

Rich in lands.

1. I have revived this Section on "*the Accusative after the Adjective*," from the Edition of 1758. It was omitted in many "so called" Eton Grammars, in which the Eton Syntax was shamefully mutilated.

2. *Extracted from the Latin Grammar of Professors Andrews and Stoddard.*

Dives equum, vestis et auri.—Virgil.
Rich in horses, robes and gold.

ANNOTATION.

Of Adjectives the following are found only with the Genitive ; *begnignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus* ; these only with an Ablative *beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus*.—*Copiosus, firmus, immūnis, inanis, inops, instructus, liber, nudus, paratus, imparatus, solutus, vacuus*, generally take the Preposition *a* or *ab*. *Fæcundus, modicus, parvus, pauper, tenuis* take *in* with an Ablative.—*Valpy*.

RULE XI.

Adjectives and Substantives govern an Ablative *descriptive of the manner in which their signification is limited* ; as,

Scèlère par est illi, industria inferior.—Cicero.
He is equal to him in crime, but inferior in industry.

Pietâte filius, consiliis parens.—Cicero.
In affection a son, in counsel a parent.

Reges nomine magis quam imperio.—Nepos.
Kings in name rather than in authority.

Obs. This Ablative Construction is called by grammarians, "*The Ablative of Limitation*." Constructions with, *numero, natione, domo*, and similar terms are usually referred to this Rule, as *Mardonius natione Medus*.—*Nepos*.

RULE XII.

Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, and *frētus*, and Participles *denoting origin*, (as, *natus, satus, genitus, ortus* and *editus*) govern an Ablative ; as,

Dignus laude.—Horace.
Worthy of praise.

Nate dea.—Virgil.
Born from a Goddess.

ANNOTATION.

Dignus frequently takes an Infinitive, or a Subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as,

Erat dignus amāri.—Virgil.
He was worthy of being loved.

Dignus qui impēret.—Cicero.
He was worthy of command.

Some of the above Adjectives occasionally have a Genitive; as, *Indignus avorum.*—Virgil. *Fretus* very rarely governs a Dative; as, *Multitudo hostium nulli rei præterquam numero freta fuit.*—Livy. The Participles denoting origin are sometimes followed by a Preposition; as, *Edita de magno flumine nympa fui.*—Ovid.

RULE XIII.

The *character, description, or quality* of a Substantive is expressed by an Ablative or Genitive Case, with an Adjective joined to it, as,

Adolescens summæ audaciæ.—Sallust.
A youth of the greatest daring.

Summis ingeniis philosophi.—Cicero.
Philosophers of the greatest talents.

ANNOTATION.

This Genitive or Ablative is variously termed by Grammarians,—“*The Case of Induement*”—“*The Case of Praise or Dispraise*”—or, “*The Descriptive Case of the limiting Noun.*” In the above examples, *audaciæ* and *ingeniis* are the limiting Nouns attached to the Substantives, *adolescens* and *philosophi*, respectively. The limiting noun requires an Adjective, Participle or Pronoun in connection with it. Some grammarians assert that the Genitive is used when permanence is implied, and that the Ablative denotes only temporary quality; but even Cicero uses *both constructions (without any such limitation), in the same sentence*, as, *Lentulum nostrum, eximia spe, summæ virtutis adolescentem* (Cicero); and the following passage clearly shows that this distinction was not observed by classical writers: *Scrobis latus pedum duorum, altus duo pondio et duodrante.*—Pliny.

Some grammarians explain the construction of the “*Ablative of Induement*”, by supposing an Ellipsis of *præditus*, “*endowed with.*” Thus *Summis ingeniis philosophi*—“*philosophers of the greatest talents*”—would become equivalent to *Summis ingeniis (præditi) philosophi*—“*philosophers (endowed) with the greatest talents.*”

RULE XIV.

An Adjective in the Comparative Degree governs an Ablative Case, when the word *quam*, *than*, is omitted after it, in Latin : as,

Vilius argentum est auro, (instead of *quam aurum*).—Horace.
Silver is less valuable than gold.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. This Ablative after the Comparative is generally used instead of a Nominative or Accusative Case in a subordinate clause, preceded by *quam*.
2. The Comparative may be followed by the Conjunction *quam*, which requires the same Case after it, as it has before it. This will be easily known by supplying the ellipsis ; as, *Ego hominem callidorem vidi neminem quam Phormionem*, Terence, *i. e. vidi*. Thus in English, you love him more than I, *i. e.*, than you love him. You love him more than me, *i. e.*, than you love me.—Valpy.
3. The Ablative is rarely used after the Comparative unless the latter stands either in the Nominative or Accusative Case. But Horace says :

Pane egeo, jam mellitis potiore placentis.

"I need bread, now more desirable than honied cakes".—Donaldson.

4. If the member of the Comparison is a Nominative or Accusative, the particle of Comparison *may* be omitted and the second member put in the Ablative, *Tullus Hostilius ferocior Romulo fuit*.—Livy. But *quam* is not omitted when the Comparative as an Adjective does not belong to the members of the Comparison, but to another word : *Tu splendidiorem habes villam quam ego*.
5. *Tanto* by so much, *quanto* by how much, *hoc* by this, *eo* by that, and *quo* by which, with some other words which signify the measure of excess or defect ; also *ætate* by age, *natu* by birth ; are often joined to Comparatives and Superlatives ; as,

Tanto pessimus omnium poeta ;
Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus.—Catullus.
Quo plus habent eo plus cupiunt.
Major et maximus ætate.
Major et maximus natu.

6. When two Adjectives, or two Adverbs, are compared together and are connected by *quam*, both are generally put in the Comparative Degree ; as,

Publii Amilii concio fuit verior quam gratior populo.—Livy.

7. *Quam* is sometimes omitted after *minus*, *plus*, *amplius*, and *longius*, which when joined to numerals are generally considered as indeclinable words not influencing the construction; as,

Cum plus annum æger fuisset.—Livy.

Si vos minus hodie decem plebis tribunos feceritis.—Livy.

Dixit Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab hibernis suis abfuisse.—Cæsar.

8. *Quam pro* in connection with a Substantive, and *quam qui* or *quam ut* with a Verb, are sometimes subjoined to Comparatives; as,

Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur.—Livy.

Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere.

Flumen latius erat quam ut tranare possent.—Ovid.¹

CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XV.

The Genitive Cases of the Personal Pronouns, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri* and *vestri*, are used when a person is spoken of; as,

Imāgo mei.

The picture of me, *i. e.* my portrait.

RULE XVI.

The Possessive Pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster* and *vester*, are used when property or possession is signified; as,

Imāgo mea.

My picture, *i. e.* the picture which belongs to me.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. Nouns taken in a Passive sense require the Genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*; thus *Amor mei*, signifies the love with which I am loved. But when action or possession are signified, the Pronouns agree with the Nouns; thus *Amor meus* signifies the

1. Annotations 6, 7 & 8, are compiled partly from Zumpt, and partly from Yonge's Latin Grammar.

love, with which I love. Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives require to be followed by *nostrum* and *vestrum*, rather than by *nostri* and *vestri*. The Possessive Pronouns admit after them the Genitives of Substantives, Adjectives, Pronouns and Participles, which agree with the Primitives understood; as, *Tuum hominis simplicis pectus vicinus*.—Cicero. *Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest*.—Cicero. *Contentus ero nostra ipsorum amicitia*.—Cicero. *Et flecti, et nostros vidisti flectis ocellos*.—Ovid.—*Valpy*.

2. *Sui, sibi*, is a Reflective Pronoun, that is, denotes an Agent, who is the Subject of the Proposition. It continues to be used in a sentence, through successive propositions, as long as no other subject is introduced. If a second subject be introduced, *se* refers strictly to that subject, and *is* should be used of the first. Alcibiades cum esset projectus inhumatus, amica corpus *ejus* texit *suo* pallio. But *se* often continues (if no ambiguity is produced) to be used of the original subject, especially if the second proposition expresses a thought or purpose of the subject of the first. Dionysius instituit, ut filiae *sibi* barbam adurent. *Suus* is the Adjective Pronoun of *se*, and denotes that what belongs to the subject of the proposition, is the object of some action or feeling, on the part of that subject. Alexander moriens annulum *suum* dederat Perdiccæ. Semper talem exitum vitæ *suae* Hannibal prosperexat animo. If a dependent proposition be introduced in the Infinitive Mood, *suus* still continues to be used of what belongs to the subject of the leading Verb. Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt *suum*: Smyrnaei vero *suum* esse confirmant. If a new subject is introduced or that which belongs to the leading subject is spoken of otherwise than as the object of an action or feeling on his part, *ejus* is used; Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, *suis* verbis, adversarios *ejus* in fuga esse. *Suus* frequently refers to the object, instead of the subject of the proposition, and it is then usually placed after the oblique case. *Illum* ulciscuntur mores *sui*. *Hunc* cives *sui* ex urbe ejecerunt. With *quisque* it precedes. *Suum* cuique tribuito. Trahit *sua* quemque voluptas. *Suus* only can be used where there is an ellipsis of a Substantive. Octavius quem *sui* (sc. amici) Cæsarem salutabant.—*Zumpt*. Section lxvii.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

(FROM PAGE 162 TO 174, INCLUSIVE.)

1. What do you mean by a "Copulative Verb?" Why are they so termed? Give instances of them. Repeat the Rule for the construction with Copulative Verbs and Passive Verbs of naming. Can you mention any peculiarities with regard to this Rule?
2. What do you mean by "Apposition?" Repeat the Rule for "Apposition." Mention some of the most usual kinds of Apposition. Express the words "City of London" in Latin, and shew the difference between the Latin and English idioms in similar expressions.
3. Under what circumstances may one Substantive govern another in the Genitive Case? Is the Genitive ever converted into any other Case? Mention instances of Ellipsis with regard to the governed Genitive, both in Latin and in English. Explain clearly the difference between the *Genitive Subjective*, and the *Genitive Objective*, both in Latin and in English. Shew that the English language possesses a double form of the Genitive, and explain the origin of each form.
4. When may the Substantives, *Opus* and *Usus*, govern a Case, and what Case do they govern? What Case is governed by Adjectives signifying any *affection* or *passion* of the mind, and by Verbal Adjectives in *ax* and *nx*? Give instances of some of these Adjectives. Can you mention any peculiarity with regard to an Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Substantive?
5. Give the Rule for "the Partitive Genitive." How can this Genitive be resolved? What is the difference between the Comparative and Superlative, when employed with the Partitive Genitive? Illustrate your meaning by an example. Mention the principal Partitive Substantives.
6. Mention the classes of Adjectives which govern the Dative Case. What Case is governed by Adjectives signifying *dimension*? What Cases do Adjectives, signifying *plenty* or *want* govern? What do you mean by "the Ablative of Limitation?" Give an example of it. Mention some Adjectives which govern the Ablative. Repeat the Rule for the construction of the Comparative Degree, and mention any peculiarities about this Rule, that may occur to you. Repeat and explain the Rules with regard to the construction of Pronouns.

THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

I.—THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

RULE XVII.

When two Verbs come together, the latter Verb is put in the Infinitive Mood ; as,

Cupio scire.—Cicero.
I desire to know.

Obs. The Latin Infinitive acts as a kind of Substantive belonging to the Verb. The Gerunds and Supines are its inflected forms.

INFLECTION OF THE ANGLO-SAXON INFINITIVE MOOD.

The Inflection of the Verb in its impersonal or infinitive form anciently consisted of three cases: a Nominative (or Accusative), a Dative, and a Genitive.

I. In Anglo-Saxon, the Nominative (or Accusative) ended in *an* :

<i>Lufian</i>	=	to love	=	<i>amare.</i>
<i>Bærnan</i>	=	to burn	=	<i>urere.</i>
<i>Syllan</i>	=	to give	=	<i>dare.</i>

The Anglo-Saxon infinitive inflection is lost in the present English, except in certain Provincial dialects.

II. In Anglo-Saxon, the Dative of the Infinitive Verb ended in *enne*, and was (as a matter of Syntax) generally, perhaps always, preceded by the Preposition *to* :—

<i>To lufenne</i>	=	<i>ad amandum.</i>
<i>To bærenne</i>	=	<i>ad urendum.</i>
<i>To Syllenne</i>	=	<i>ad dandum.</i>

The English Infinitives exist under two forms, and are referable to a double origin.

1. The *Independent form*. This is used after the words, *can*, *may*, *will*, and some others ; as, *I can speak* ; *I may go* ; *I shall come* ; *I will move*. Here there is no Preposition, and the origin of the Infinitive is from the form in *-an*.

2. The *Prepositional form*. This is used after the majority of English Verbs ; as, *I wish to speak* ; *I mean to go* ; *I intend to come* ; *I determine to move*. Here we have the Preposition *to*, and the origin of the Infinitive is from the form in *-nne*. Expressions like *to err* = *error*, *to forgive* = *forgiveness*, in lines like

“ *To err* is human ; *to forgive*, divine,”

are very remarkable. They exhibit the phenomenon of a Nominative.

THE LATIN AND ENGLISH INFINITIVES, AND THE METHODS OF RENDERING THE WORD "THAT" INTO LATIN, IN CONNECTION WITH THE INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOODS.

The Infinitive is an undeclined Neuter Substantive, which denotes in the most general way the action or state expressed by the Verb. The use of it, is in strictness limited to the Nominative and Accusative, indeed almost exclusively to the latter.

- a. It seems to occupy the place of a Nominative in such sentences as,

Docto hōmīnī vivērē est cōgitārē.—Cic. Tusc. v. 38. iii.
With the educated man to live is to think.

- b. It occupies the place of an Accusative in such sentences as,

Stoīcī irascī nesciunt.—Cic. de Or. iii., 18, 65.
The Stoic knows not anger.

The most common use of the Infinitive is as the object of Active Verbs, particularly those which signify *wish, power, duty, habit, knowledge, intention, commencement, continuance, or emotion.*

The Verbs which express the emotions of the mind are followed by an Accusative and Infinitive to express the cause of the emotion, as,

Hæc perfecta esse gaudeo.—Cic. p. Rosc. Am. 47, 136,
I am delighted that these matters are settled.

The Accusative that precedes the Infinitive performs the same office as the Nominative in other Moods, and it is for this reason often called the *Subject-Accusative*.

Some writers, especially the poets, use the Infinitive in many constructions where good prose writers employ a different form of words; as,

Frūges consūmērē nāti.—Hor. Ep. i., 2, 27.
Born to consume grain.

The more legitimate phrase would have been *ad frūges consumendas*.—*Professor Key*.

Case having grown not only out of a Dative, but out of a Dative *plus* its governing Preposition.—*Latham's English Language*. Chap. xvii.

In Anglo-Saxon the Present Infinitive is never used with the Particle *to*, as in Modern English, though the Gerund always requires *to*. This Gerund is nothing but the Dative of the Infinitive, which is, in fact, a sort of Noun.—*Rask's Anglo-Saxon Grammar* (p. 125). Copenhagen, 1830.

. During the composition of this work I have carefully compared *Rask's Anglo-Saxon Syntax* with the *Latin Rules*, and I have frequently been surprised at the remarkable correspondence between the Latin and Anglo-Saxon constructions. Any student who will take the trouble to compare "*Rask's Grammar*" and "*Crombie's English Syntax*," as also *Latham's Work*, with this edition of the *Eton Grammar*, will be enabled to thoroughly understand the real explanation of many apparent inconsistencies in *English Grammar*.

The Infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose*; but the Infinitive in Latin *never* does.

(Eng.) I am come to see you.

(Lat.) I am come that I may see you.

(Eng.) I came to see you.

(Lat.) I came that I might see you.

The English Infinitive expressing a *purpose* may be translated by "*ut*" with the Subjunctive.—*Arnold*.

The Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood are used:—

I. After the words of saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing; as, *histōria narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē*, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus: *sentimūs calērē ignem, nīvem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl*, we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.

II. After such expressions as *nōtum est*, it is known; *justum est*, it is just: *vērisimilē est*, it is probable; *constāt*, it is agreed, it is certain, etc.: as, *constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē*, it is certain that Rome was founded by Romulus.—*Dr. Smith's Principia Latina*.

Any sentence may become *objective*, that is, dependent in the Infinitive Mood on another Verb; and in this case the Nominative, or *subject*, becomes the Accusative or *object*; thus the sentence: *Æneas filius fuit Anchisæ* might become the object of the Verb *dixit*, "he said," and we should then write: *dixit*, "he said,"—what? *Æneam Anchisæ filium esse*, "that Æneas was the son of Anchises"—that is *what* he said, or the object of his speaking.

Hence the student will remember that a dependent sentence beginning with *that* may always be rendered by the Accusative and Infinitive in Latin, if it can be made to answer or explain the question *what*? If it expresses an end or consequence it must be rendered by *ut* and the Subjunctive.—*Donaldson*.

The Infinitive often follows Adjectives and Substantives, particularly in the Poets; as, *Apta regi*.—Ovid. *Et jam tempus equum spumantia solvere colla*.—Virgil.

The word, on which the Infinitive depends, is often understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victum*.—Virgil. *i. e. decet*. Sometimes the Infinitive is understood; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*.—Cicero. *i. e. canere*.

The Infinitive *to be* before a Participle is expressed in Latin by the Participle Future; as,

Ratio reddenda est.—Cicero.

An account is to be given.

Verbs of *commanding*, *praying*, *wishing*, and those which imply *futurity* are followed by the Subjunctive with *ut* expressed or understood, as well as by the Infinitive; as, *Reliqui legati ut exirent præcepit*.—Nepos. *Syro ignoscas volo*.—Terence.

Dubito and *dubium est* are frequently followed by *an*, *num*, or *utrum*, with a Subjunctive; if a negative is joined with them, by *quin*; as *Dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam.*—Nepos. *Non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius.*—Terence.

Verbs of *fearing*, as, *metuo*, *timeo*, *paveo*, *vereor*, in an affirmative sense, are followed by *ne*; in a negative sense, by *ne non* or *ut*; as, *Tinnet ne deseras se.*—Terence. *An verēbāmini ne non id facerem?*—Terence. *Id paves, ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas.*—Terence. You are afraid that you will be obliged to marry her; you, that you will not be permitted to have her.

Impedio is often followed by *ne* or *quominus*; *prohibeo* by *quin* or *quominus.*—*Valpy.*

When two Verbs come together, connected by "that," especially in such sentences as "I hear that," "we know that," "you rejoice that," &c., the Conjunction "that" is commonly omitted, and the second Verb is put in the Infinitive Mood, and the Noun in the Accusative Case. The English phrases, "I promise to do," "You hope to see," "He pretends to be," "We pretend not (to pretend not, *dissimulo*) to know," etc. are rendered in Latin, "I promise that I will do," "You hope that you shall see," "He pretends that he is," "We pretend that we do not know."—*Yonge's Exempla Majora Latina.*

CONSTRUCTION OF THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.¹

RULE XVIII.

The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Substantive, declined in the Singular only.

The Gerund acts as a substitute for the oblique Cases of the Infinitive, the Infinitive Present being considered as a Nominative; as,

Nominative,	(<i>Scribere</i>), writing.
Genitive,	<i>Scribendi</i> , of writing.
Dative,	<i>Scribendo</i> , for writing.
Accusative,	<i>Scribendum</i> (<i>inter</i>), whilst writing.
Ablative,	<i>Scribendō</i> , by writing.

ANNOTATION.

1. Professor Key says (in his Syntax, Art. 1283), "The Gerund is a Neuter Substantive in *endo*, which denotes the action or state expressed by the Verb. It differs from the Infinitive in that it is declinable, and that through all the cases, including (what is commonly omitted) the Nominative."

2. The best authorities differ with regard to the manner in which the Nominative of the Gerund should be supplied. Arnold (in Henry's First Latin Book, Exercise 37.) says that the Gerund borrows the Infinitive as its Nominative. Dr. Smith (in his "Principia Latina," Exercise 40,) makes the Gerund in the Nominative Case equivalent to what is commonly called the Gerund in *dum* of the Nominative, that is, in the above example, Dr. Smith would substitute *scribendum* as a Nominative instead of *scribere*, which I have given in accordance with Arnold's view.¹

RULE XIX.

The Cases of the Gerund are subject to the same Government as the Cases of Substantives ;
as,

Genitive,	<i>Ars scribendi</i> , the art of writing.
Dative,	<i>Utilis scribendō</i> , useful for writing.
Accusative,	<i>Inter scribendum</i> , whilst writing.
Ablative,	<i>Discit scribendo</i> , he learns by writing.

ANNOTATION.

3. The Genitive of the Gerund is used after Substantives and Relative Adjectives. The Dative of the Gerund is used after Adjectives which govern this Case, particularly after *utilis*, *nutilis*, *idoneus*, etc., and after Substantives and Verbs denoting a purpose or design. In this sense, however, it is more common to use *ad* with the Accusative of the Gerund or a clause with *ut*.

The Accusative of the Gerund is invariably dependent upon Prepositions, most frequently upon *ad* (to) or *inter* (during or amidst), but sometimes also upon *ante*, *circa*, and *ob*.

The Ablative of the Gerund is used without a Preposition, as an *ablativus instrumenti*, or with the Prepositions *ab*, *de*, *ex* and *in*. In the first case the construction is commonly, and in the latter always, changed into the Passive, when the Gerund governs an Accusative.—*Zumpt*. Section lxxx.

1. The above excellent authorities differ merely with regard to the Nominative of the Gerund. They coincide with regard to the more important relations of the Gerund and Gerundive.

Admirable Exercises on the Gerund and Gerundive will be found in Arnold's "Henry's First Latin Book," and Dr. Smith's "Principia Latina."

RULE XX.

Gerunds may be changed into Gerundives which agree with their Substantives, in Gender, Number, and Case; thus,

Consilium scribendi epistolam.
The intention of writing a letter.

may also be expressed by

Consilium scribendæ epistolæ.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The relation of the Gerund to the real Participle in *dus*, is the following. As the Gerund has an Active sense, when the Verb has a dependent Accusative, this Active construction may, without any alteration of sense, be changed to Passive; *consilium scribendæ epistolæ*, i. e. the design of a letter to be written, or, that a letter be written. What is the Accusative in the Active construction, is put in the Passive in the Case in which the Gerund stood, and the Participles agree with it; e. gr. *in scribendo epistolam* becomes *in scribendâ epistolâ*; *ad scribendum epistolam* becomes *ad scribendam epistolam*. This change may take place, wherever no ambiguity is likely to arise from the Gender not being distinguishable. It should not be practised, when the Accusative which the Gerund governs is the Neuter of a Pronoun or an Adjective; for example, we should say, *studium illum efficiendi*, not *illius*; *cupido plura cognoscendi*, not *plurium cognoscendorum*. But independently of this, the use of the Participle in *dus* for the Gerund is less frequent in some writers, Livy for example, than in others. Cicero and Cæsar prefer using the Gerundive.—*Zumpt*.
2. The Participle in *-ndus* is generally found as a substitute for some use of the Infinitive Active; and it is called the *gerundium* or *gerund*, when it governs the Case of the Verb, and the *gerundivum* or *gerundive*, when it agrees with the object; thus in, *consilium capiendi urbem* we have a *gerund*; but in, *consilium urbis capiendæ*, a *gerundive*, and both phrases mean, "the design of taking the city."

If the Verb of the Gerund requires an Accusative, the Gerundive is preferred; as, *consuetudo hominum immolandum*, "the custom of sacrificing human beings," because *immolo* is transitive.—*Donaldson*.

RULE XXI.

The Gerund (or Gerundive) in *dum* of the Nominative Case governs the Dative, of the agent, as,

Scribendum est mihi epistolam.

I must write a letter.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. I have used the word *Gerund* or *Gerundive* in *dum* in the above Rule, because the best grammarians are not agreed whether the Participle in *dum* is *active* or *passive*. In fact, it sometimes varies, and that even in the same sentence, as *Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero pulsanda tellus.*—Horace. “Now we must drink, now the earth must be struck with a free foot.” The Dative is not generally expressed unless when some particular person or persons are meant.
2. When a Participle is thus used for a Gerund, it is called *Gerundive*, and is usually translated like a Gerund. The Gerundive cannot be substituted for the Gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the Gender not being distinguishable. It should not be used when the object of the Gerund is a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendi ratio*—(Cicero)—not *alicujus. Artem et vera et falsa dijucandi* (Id.) not *verorum dijucandorum.*—*Professors Andrews and Stoddard.*
3. If the Latin Verb is a Transitive Verb governing the Accusative, we must not *govern* this Accusative by the Neuter Participle; but the Accusative must be made the Nominative, and the Participle in *dus* put in agreement with it.

We must cultivate virtue. { *Colenda est virtus.*
Not, *colendum est virtutem.*—Arnold.

The two constructions of the Neuter Gender with a Noun dependent upon it, and the Gerundive in agreement with the Noun, are not to be used indifferently. The construction with the Gerund was the earlier one, and so belonged to the older writers, but still maintained its ground in certain phrases. In those which are commonly considered the best writers, the construction with the Gerundive was for the most part preferred. Indeed, when the phrase is attached to a Preposition governing the Accusative, the Gerundive construction is adopted almost without exception.—*Professor Key.*

CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUPINES.

RULE XXII.

The Supine in *-um* is used after Verbs of motion, instead of the Active Infinitive, and it denotes the purpose of the motion; as,

Spectatum veniunt, instead of *spectare*.—Ovid.
They come to see, *that is*, for the purpose of seeing.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. This expression may be varied by different constructions; thus, *they come to see the games* may be expressed in Latin by *veniunt—spectatum ludos—spectandi ludos causâ* or *gratiâ—spectandorum ludorum causa—spectandi ludorum causa—ad spectandum ludos—ad spectandos ludos—ludis spectandis—ludos spectaturi—ut* or *qui ludos spectent*—and poetically *ludos spectare*.—Valpy.
2. This Active Supine is frequently joined with the Infinitive Passive of the Verb *eo*, to go (used impersonally, *itur*) to express the sense of the Future Infinitive Passive of the Verb Transitive; as, *Constat captivos ab hostibus occisos iri*, *Constat hostes ire occisum captivos*, "It is evident that the Captives will be slain by the enemy," (that is, "that the enemy *are going* to slay the captives,") this being precisely the same form that we use in English, French, &c.—*London Latin Grammar*.

RULE XXIII.

The Supine in *-u*, is used after Adjectives, and after the Substantives, *fas*, *nefas* and *opus*, instead of the Passive Infinitive; as,

Turpe dictū (instead of *dici*).
Shameful to be spoken.

Fas est dictū.—Cicero.
Lawful to be said.

Nefas dictu.—Ovid.
Unlawful to be said.

Dictu opus est.—Terence.
Necessary to be said.

ANNOTATIONS:

1. The Supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of Adjectives signifying wonderful, agreeable, easy or difficult, worthy or unworthy, honourable or base, and a few others; as,

Mirabile dictu!—Virgil
Wonderful to tell, or to be told!

Jucundum cognitu atque auditu.—Cicero.
Pleasant to be known and heard.

Res factu facilis.—Terence.
A thing easy to be done.

Facilia inventu.—Gellius.

Incredibile memorātu.—Sallust.

Turpia dictu.—Cicero.

Optimum factu.—Id.

The principal Adjectives after which the Supine in *u* occurs are *affabilis, arduus, asper, bonus, dignus, indignus, facilis, difficilis, fœdus, gravis, honestus, horrendus, incredibilis, jucundus, injucundus, memorabilis, pulcher, rarus, turpis, and utilis.*

As the Supine in *u* is commonly translated by a Passive form, it is placed under the Passive Voice. In many cases, however, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. It seems not to differ in its nature from other Verbal Nouns in *us*, of the fourth Declension. In the expressions, *Obsonātu redeo*, (Plautus), *Cubitu surgat* (Cato), *obsonātu, cubitu*, though following Verbs, are by some considered as Supines, by others, as Nouns, depending on a Preposition understood.—Professors Andrews and Stoddard.

2. This Supine may be rendered by the Infinitive, by *ad* with a Gerund in *dum*, or by a Verbal Noun; as, *Leviora tolli Pergama.*—Horace. *Res difficiles ad explicandum.*—Cicero. *Rebus cognitione dignis.*—Cicero.

The Supines are, Verbal Nouns of the fourth Declension; the Active therefore retains the nature of the Accusative, and is governed by *ad* understood; and the Passive of the Ablative, and is governed by *in*.—Valpy.

CASES GOVERNED BY VERBS.¹

I.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

RULE XXIV.

Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative Case of the nearer object; as,

Legātos mittunt.—Cæsar.
They send ambassadors.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. Here *legatos*, ambassadors, is the immediate or nearer object of the Verb *mittunt*. The Case of the remote object is that which expresses some additional relation; as, *dant librum puero*, "they give the book to the boy." Here *puero*, "the boy," is the case of the remote object, and *librum*, the book, is the immediate or nearer object of the Verb *dant*. The Case of the remote object is generally expressed in Latin by the Genitive, Dative or Ablative, and sometimes even by an additional Accusative; thus in the sentence, *Rogo te sententiam*, "I ask you your opinion;" *te* is the nearer object, and *sententiam* is the remote object of the Verb *rogo*. Some Transitive Verbs, (such as *amo*, *lego*, etc.) admit only a nearer object. Others, (such as *do æstimo*, etc.) admit both a nearer and a remote object.
2. The Accusative Case of the nearer object may be joined to Transitive Verbs, either Active or Deponent, in order to express that to which the action tends and in that in which it terminates.
3. Verbs which denote to smell or taste of anything, such as *olere*, *redolere*, *sapere*, *resipere*, are joined with an Accusative, like Transitive Verbs; as, *olet unguenta, piscis ipsum mare sapit*.
Other Verbs obtain a Transitive force, because an action exerted upon another is implied, though not described in them; e. gr. *horreo tenebras, doleo vicem tuam*.
4. Some Neuter Verbs admit what is termed a *Cognate Accusative*, such as, *Duram servit servitutem*, (Plautus), "He serves a severe slavery." We have similar instances in English of a Cognate

¹ In the Government of the Cases, the Accusative has been placed first, and the Dative Case second, according to the system adopted by Madvig, Zumpt, and the best modern grammarians. The Accusative must come first in Government, since it is the immediate object of the Verb.

Accusative, (that is, an Accusative of a meaning similar to that of the Verb, and, as it were, extracted from the Verb itself,) in the expressions, "he rides a race,"—"he sleeps the sleep that knows no waking." As Latham observes in his "English Language," chapter xvii. "The Neuter Verb governs the Accusative Case not objectively but modally."¹

RULE XXV.

Verbs of *asking* and *teaching* admit of two Accusatives, one of the *person* and another of the *thing*; as,

Pacem tē poscimus.—Virgil.
We ask you for peace.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. Here *te* is the nearer object, and *pacem* is the remote object of the Verb *poscimus*.
2. The principal Verbs which admit the double Accusative, are, *doceo* and its compounds; *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *posco*, and *percontor*. Verbs of concealing sometimes admit a double Accusative; as, *ea ne me celet*, *consuefecit filium*,—Terence.

RULE XXVI.

Some Transitive Verbs of *Motion*, compounded with *trans*, *circum*, *præter*, or *ad*, may have two Accusatives, one of which is governed by the Preposition contained in the Verb; as,

Equitatum pontem transducit.—Cæsar.
He leads his cavalry across the bridge.

ANNOTATION.

Here *equitatum*, "the cavalry," is governed by the Verb *ducit*; and *pontem*, "the bridge," is governed by the Preposition *trans*.

¹ See the explanation of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, and the Cognate Accusative in pages 61 and 62 of this Grammar.

RULE XXVII.

The Passives of those Active Verbs which govern two Accusatives, retain the Accusative of the thing; as,

Rogatus est sententiam.—Livy.

He was asked his opinion.

Belgæ Rhenum transducuntur.—Cæsar.

The Belgæ are led across the Rhine.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. In consequence of the change from the Active to the Passive form, the Accusative of the Person becomes converted into the Nominative of the Passive Verb. Thus the Active form would be *rogaverunt illum sententiam*—they asked him his opinion. In the Passive form, *illum* becomes converted into *ille*, and stands as the Nominative to the Passive Verb; thus, (*ille*) *rogatus est sententiam*.
2. Some Passive Verbs of *clothing*, as also *induo*, *exuo*, and *cingo*, sometimes have an Accusative; as *vestem, induitur*.—Curtius. *Inutile ferrum cingitur*.—Virgil.

II.—THE DATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

RULE XXVIII.

All Verbs whose signification admits a remoter object, for whose *benefit or injury* anything is done, may govern a Dative; as,

Parce victis.—Ovid.

Spare the conquered.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The Dative serves to denote the *remoter object*, to which the action of the subject refers not immediately (as it does to the Accusative), but to which the action is directed, *for which*, to the *benefit or loss of which*, something is done, and in this sense it is called the *Dativus commōdi aut incommōdi*—the Dative of advantage or disadvantage.
2. All Verbs whose signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for which or to whose benefit or injury anything takes place, may have a Dative. If Transitive, they take an Accusative of the immediate, and a Dative of the remoter object; e.g., *mitto tibi librum* (for which *mitto ad te* may also be used), *suadeo tibi*

hoc ; if Intransitive, they take a Dative only ; e. gr., *faveo, irascor tibi*.

3. Several Verbs, according to their different meanings, govern either the Accusative or the Dative ; as,

Caveo tibi. I provide, or am concerned for thy safety.

Caveo te, or a te. I avoid thee, am on my guard against thee.

Metuo, timeo tibi. I am alarmed on thy account.

Metuo, timeo te. I fear thee.

Consulo tibi (prospicio, provideo). I provide for thy interests—*te*, I ask thy advice.

Tempero and *moderor*, with the Dative, signify to set bounds to something, to moderate ; e. gr., *cibo, animo, irrae, lacrymis* ; with the Accusative, to regulate and arrange. *Temperare* is also used, without a Dative of the person himself, for to refrain, forbear, either with a Dative of the object, or an ablative with *ab*. *Temperare sociis*, equivalent to *parcere*.—Zumpt. Sec. lxx.

RULE XXIX.

Verbs of *commanding* or *obeying* govern the Dative ; as,

Impērat aut servit collecta pecūniā cuique.—Horace.

Wealth commands or enslaves each possessor.

ANNOTATION.

In consequence of the very extensive signification of the *Dativus commodi aut incommodi*, a great variety of Verbs may be classed under this Rule. The most important of these are those which signify to *benefit, to injure*, as *prosum, obsum, noceo* ; to *be for or against*, to *yield*—*adversor, obtrecto, officio, cedo* ; to *be well or ill-disposed towards*, as *faveo, studeo, ignosco, indulgeo, invidet, insidior* ; to *assist*, as *auxilior, opitulator* ; to *please, to displease*, as *placeo, displiceo, &c.* ; to *trust, to distrust*, as *credo, fido, confido, diffido, &c.*

RULE XXX.

Most Verbs compounded with Prepositions, or with the Adverbs *bene, male, or satis*, govern the Dative of the remote object ; as,

Nox prælitō intervēnit.—Livy.

Night interrupted the battle.

Tibi beneficeant omnes.—Plautus.

May they all bless you.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. These Verbs are generally compounded with one of the eleven Prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post præ, pro, sub, or super*. They are either Transitives, and as such have an Accusative besides; or Intransitives, without an Accusative of the object.

The following are the most important Transitive Verbs of this description: *addo, affero, affigo, adjungo, admoveo, comparo, compono, conjungo; immisceo, impono, incido, includo, infero, ingero, injicio, insero, interpono; objicio, oppono; posthabeo, postpono; praefero, praepono; subjicio, substerno*.

The following are Intransitive: *accedo, adhaereo, annuo, assideo, aspiro; autecello; cohaereo, incido, incubo and incumbo, inhaereo, interjaceo, intervenio; praesideo, praevaleo; succumbo, supersto, supervivo, and the compounds of esse*.

These Verbs take the Dative in order to express the relation to another object referred to by the Preposition, if the compound Verb has a secondary meaning, which suggests no idea of any local relation; as, *adesse amicis*.

But if a local relation be clearly designed, though only figuratively, the Preposition with its Case is usually subjoined to the Verb; as, *Adhaeret navis ad scopulum*. Sometimes a different Preposition is employed to denote the local relation more accurately; as, *obrepere in animum, obversari ante oculos*.—Madvig. ch. iii. art. 245.

RULE XXXI.

Est taken for *habēre*, (to have) governs a Dative denoting a *possessor*; as,

Est mihi liber.
I have a book.

ANNOTATION.

This sentence is equivalent to "*Ego habeo librum*." The form with *est* is more correct Latin. The thing possessed becomes the subject of the Verb. The First and Second Persons of the Verb *sum* are not usually found in this construction.

RULE XXXII.

Sum and several other Verbs may govern two Datives, one of *the purpose*, and the other of the *remote object*; as,

Exitio est avidis mare nautis.—Horace,
The sea is ruin to avaricious sailors.

ANNOTATION.

The other Verbs after which two Datives occur, are, *do, fio, duco, habeo, relinquo, verto*; also, *eo, curro, mitto, venio, appōno, cedo, pateo, compāro, suppedito*, and some others.

The Dative of the purpose is often used after these Verbs, without the Dative of the object: as, *Exemplo est formica*, (Horace.) The ant is (serves) for an example.

III.—THE GENITIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

RULE XXXIII.

Sum, when it signifies *possession, property, or duty*, governs the Genitive; as,

Militis est dūci parēre.

It is (the duty) of a soldier to obey his general.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. Some grammarians consider that there is an ellipsis of some Substantive, such as *munus* or *officium*, in this construction. Others think that this Possessive or Attributive Genitive depends upon the Verb itself, and not on a Substantive understood.
2. The word *est* is usually found in this construction, and frequently in an Impersonal sense. *Facio* and *fio* are also found with a Genitive; as,

Hispaniam Romanæ ditionis fecit.—Livy.

Scipio made Spain (subject) to the Roman sway.

Thebæ populi Romani belli jure factæ sunt.—Livy.

Thebes, by right of war, was made subject to the Roman people.

In the case of *facio* and *fio* there is, most probably, an ellipsis of a Substantive.

3. Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives in the Nominative Case may be substituted for the Genitive; as,

Nostrum est ferre modice populi voluntates.—Cicero.

Et agere et pati fortia, Romanum est.—Livy.

RULE XXXIV.

Verbs of *valuing* govern the Genitive; as,

Magni æstimabat pecuniam.—Cicero.

He valued money greatly.

ANNOTATION.

The Verbs of *estimating* or *valuing*, and their passives, (*æstimare, ducere, facere, fieri, habere, pendere, putare, taxare, and esse*), are joined with the Genitive, when the value is expressed in a general way by an Adjective, but with the Ablative, when it is expressed by a Substantive. Genitives of this kind are:—*magni, permagni, pluris, plurimi, maximi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti*; and the compounds, *tantidem, quantivis, quanticunque*: but never *multi* and *majoris*. The Substantive to be understood with these Genitives is *pretii*, which is sometimes expressed (with *esse*).—Zumpt.

RULE XXXV.

Verbs of *admonishing* govern the Genitive, denoting the admonition given; as,

Milites temporis monet.—Tacitus.
He reminds the soldiers of the occasion.

ANNOTATION.

The Verbs of admonishing, are, *moneo, commoneo, admoneo, and commonefacio*. They sometimes take an Ablative with *de* instead of a Genitive; as, *De æde telluris me admones.*—Cicero.

Moneo and its compounds admit a double Accusative when the Accusative of the thing is a Neuter Pronoun; as, *Illud me præclare admones.*—Cicero.

RULE XXXVI.

Verbs of *accusing, condemning* or *acquitting*, govern the Genitive of the *charge* or *penalty*, and the Accusative of *the person*; as,

Arguit me furti.—Cicero.
He accuses me of theft.

ANNOTATION.

An Ablative with *de* is often used instead of the Genitive; as, *Accusare de negligentia* (Cicero); and after *libero*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scelere liberati sumus.*—Cicero.

An Ablative without a Preposition is often used with some of these Verbs; as, *Liberare culpâ* (Cicero); this happens with general words denoting crime; as, *scelus, peccatum, &c.*; as, *Me peccato solvo.*—Livy.

RULE XXXVII.

Verbs signifying *plenty* or *want*, *loading* or *filling*, *ease* or *deliverance*, govern either a *Genitive* or *Ablative*; as,

Divitiis abundat.—Terence.

He abounds in riches.

Implentur vetēris Bacchī.—Virgil.

They fill themselves with old wine.

ANNOTATION.

Verbs of this kind are:—1. *Abundare, affluere, florere, vigere; carere, egere, indigere, vacare.* 2. *Complere, explere, implere, cumulare, satiare; afficere, donare, ornare, augere; privare, spoliare, orbare, fraudare, nudare*, and many others of a similar meaning.

RULE XXXVIII.

Misereor, miseresco, and *satāgo*, govern the *Genitive*; as,

Miserementī sociorum.—Cicero.

Pity the allies

Miserescite regis.—Virgil.

Pity the king.

Satāgit rerum.—Terence.

He is busily occupied about his affairs.

ANNOTATION.

Misereor and *miseresco* govern the *Genitive* of the cause which produces the feeling of pity. *Satāgo* is compounded of *satis* and *ago*. *Satis* governs a *Genitive* (as *satis eloquentiæ*—Sallust), consequently *satāgo* retains the same construction.

RULE XXXIX.

Recordor, memīnī, reminiscor, and *obliviscor* govern a *Genitive* or an *Accusative*; as,

Flagitiōrum recordabitur.—Cicero.

He will remember these disgraces.

Cinnam memini.—Cicero.

I remember Cinna.

Obliviscere Graios.—Virgil.

Forget the Grecians.

ANNOTATION.

1. These Verbs seem sometimes to be considered as Active, and sometimes as Neuter. As Active, they take an Accusative regularly; as Neuter, they take a Genitive, denoting that in respect to which memory, &c., are exercised. An Infinitive or other clause sometimes follows these Verbs; as, *Obliti quid deceat.*—Horace. *Memini te scribere.*—Cicero. *Quæ sum passura recordor.*—Ovid.
2. *Recordor* and *memini*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an Ablative with *de*; as, *Petimus ut de suis liberis . . . recordentur.*—Cicero.
3. *Memini*, signifying to make mention of, has a Genitive, or an Ablative with *de*; as, *Neque hujus rei meminit poeta.*—Quintus. *Meministi de exsilibus.*—Cicero. The Genitive with *recordor* is very rare.—Professors Andrews and Stoddard.

RULE. XL.

Verbs signifying any *emotion of the mind*, generally govern a Genitive Case; as,

Discrucior animi.—Horace.
I am tortured in mind.

ANNOTATION.

Those Verbs are also constructed with an Ablative, which denote (Intransitive) to abstain from a thing, to renounce it, or (Transitive) to free to keep away, to exclude from something, as, *abstineo, desisto, libero solvo, exsolvo, levo, exonero, arceo, prohibeo, excludo*, e. g. *abstinere*, (or *abstinere se*) *maledicto, scelere, liberare aliquem suspicione, levare aliquem onere, arcece tyradnum reditu, prohibere aliquem cibo tectoque; prohibere, Campaniam populationibus* (to protect from plunder). But the Verbs which signify to abstain, to hinder, to exclude, are also used with the Preposition *ab*. e. g. *abstinere a vitiis; prohibere hostem a pugna (cives a periculo); excludere aliquem a republica*. Where a person is specified, the Preposition is always employed: *arcere aliquid a sese.*—*Madvig.*

THE ABLATIVE CASE AFTER THE VERB.

RULE XLI.

The *cause, manner, means, or instrument* may be expressed in the Ablative, without a Preposition after any Verb; as,

Pallere metu.—Ovid.
To be pale through fear.

Lento gradu procēdit.

He advances with a slow step.

Certant defendere saxis.—Virgil.

They endeavour to defend themselves with stones.

ANNOTATION.

1. The Agent is said to be either *voluntary* or *involuntary*. A voluntary Agent denotes an *animate*, and an involuntary Agent an *inanimate* object.
2. When the *cause* is a voluntary Agent, it is generally put in the Accusative, with the Preposition *propter*, *ob*, or *per* ; as,
Non est æquum me propter vos decipi.—Terence.
It is not fair that I should be deceived on account of you.
3. The *manner* is often expressed with *cum*, particularly when an Adjective is joined with it ; as,
Magno cum metu dicere incipio.—Cicero.
I begin to speak with great fear.
4. When the *means* denotes a voluntary Agent, it should properly be expressed by a Preposition, or by the Ablative *opera*, with a Genitive or Possessive Pronoun ; as, *Per præonem vendere aliquid.*—Cicero. *Non mea opera evenit.*—Terence.
5. The *instrument* is seldom used with a Preposition. However, the poets sometimes prefix Prepositions ; as, *Trajectus ab ense.*—Ovid, *Exercere sub vomere.*—Virgil.

RULE XLII.

The voluntary Agent of a Verb Passive is put in the Ablative, with *a* or *ab* ; as,

Hannibal a Scipiōne victus est.—Livy.

Hannibal was conquered by Scipio.

ANNOTATION.

1. *Neuter* verbs, also, are frequently followed by an Ablative of the voluntary Agent, with *a* or *ab* ; as,
Marcellus perit ab Annibale.—Pliny.
Marcellus was slain by Hannibal.
2. The Preposition is sometimes omitted, particularly in poetry ; as, *Nec conjuge captus.*—Ovid.
3. The Dative of the Agent is generally employed after the Passive voice, and Participles in *dus*.—See Rule
4. The *involuntary* Agent of a Passive Verb is put in the Ablative, without Preposition, and comes under the Rule for the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, or *instrument* ; as, *Maximo dolore conficior.*—Cicero.

RULE XLIII.

The *price* of a thing is put in the Ablative, except when it is expressed by the Adjectives *tanti*, *quantī*, *pluris*, or *minōris* ; as,

Vendidit auro patriam—Virgil.
He sold his country for gold.

ANNOTATION.

When the price for which a thing is *bought*, *sold*, or *made*, is stated indefinitely, the price is expressed in the Genitive, with *tanti*, *quantī* *pluris*, or *minōris* ; but in the Ablative with *magno*, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*, *nihilo*, *nonnihilō*. With those verbs which signify *to estimate*, the Genitive of all these words is employed—*estimo* alone having both cases.—*Madvig*.

RULE XLIV.

Utor, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor*, govern the Ablative ; as,

Utitur victoria
He makes use of his victory.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The use of the Ablative may be explained by the fact, that these Verbs had not originally a purely transitive signification. *Potior* is also put with the Genitive, though seldom in prose ; but always in the phrase *potiri rerum*, to make oneself master of sovereign power (to possess it).
2. These Verbs are occasionally found with the Accusative in the older poets, and some few prose writers. The Gerundive is used like that of a common Transitive Verb which governs the Accusative ; as, *Spes potiundorum castrorum*.—Cæs. B. G. III. 6.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF TIME.

RULE XLV.

When a portion of time is mentioned, expressive of *duration*, in answer to the question, *how long?* the Noun is generally put in the Accusative; as,

Ter centum regnabitur annos.—Virgil.

Sovereignty shall be held during three hundred years.

RULE XLVI.

When a portion of time is mentioned, answering to the question, *when?* the Noun is generally put in the Ablative Case; as,

Nemo omnibus hōris sapiens.—Pliny.

No one is wise at all hours.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. In specifying duration and extent of time (*how long?*) the words which define the time are put in the Accusative.
2. The Ablative of words which denote a space of time is used to denote both the time *at which* (*when*) a thing happens, and the time *within* which it happens (the time which elapses in the meanwhile); as, *Tertio anno urbs capta est. Roscius Romam multis annis venit.*—Cic. Rosc. Am. 27. So also without an Adjective, *hieme* (in the winter), *estate die*, *nocte luce* (in broad day).—Madvig, Chaps. ii., iv.
3. The Accusative, and not the Ablative, is generally used to express the extent of time. The Ablative, without a Preposition, is used to express the point of time at which anything happens. *Qua nocte natus Alexander est, eadem Dianæ Ephesiæ templum deflagavit.*
4. The Ablative is also used to express the time *before*, and the time *after* a thing happened; and *ante* and *post* are in this case placed after the Ablative. The meaning, however, is the same as when *ante* and *post* are joined with the Accusative in the usual order, just as we may sometimes say, in the same sense, "three years after," and "after three years"—*post tres annos decessit*, and *tribus annis post decessit.*—Zumpt, Sec. lxi., lxxii.

CONSTRUCTION OF NAMES OF PLACES.

RULE XLVII.

Continuance in a town, or small island, is put in the Genitive, if the Noun is of the First or Second Declension ; it is put in the Ablative, if the Noun is of the Third Declension, or of the Plural Number ; as,

Vixit Londini.

He lived in London.

Obiit Crete.

He died at Crete.

Scriptis Athenis.

He wrote at Athens.

RULE XLVIII.

Motion *to* a town, or small island, is put in the Accusative ; motion *from* or *through* a town, is put in the Ablative ; as,

Carthaginem rediit.—Cicero,

He returned to Carthage.

Accepi Romæ literas.—Cicero.

I have received a letter from Rome.

Iter Laodiceæ faciebam.—Cicero.

I was passing through Laodicea.

RULE XLIX.

Domus and *rus* are subject to the same government as the names of towns and small islands ; as,

Domi ero.—Terence.

I shall be at home.

Ite domum.—Virgil.

Go home.

Rure vivo.—Horace.

I live in the country.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. The names of towns and small islands of the First and Second Declension Singular are put in the Genitive, to denote the place *where* a thing is, or occurs; as, *Romæ esse*. Of other names, the Ablative is used.

This idiom proceeds from the fact, that the Genitive Singular of the First and Second Declension have a different origin from the Genitive of the Third Declension, and having at first (in addition to its other meanings) conveyed the notion of *being in a place*.

In the same way are used the Genitives *domi*, at home; *humi*, on the ground (to the ground); with *belli* and *militiæ*, in conjunction with *domi*; as, *Marcus Drusus occisus est domi suæ*.

2. The Proper names of towns and smaller islands (each of which may be considered as a town) stand in the Accusative without a Preposition, when they are specified as the object of a motion; as, *Romam ire*. But *ad* is used when only the vicinity of the town is meant; as, *Adolescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum*.—Cicero.

Where no motion is indicated, but only a space expressed, the Preposition is added; as, *omnis ora a Salōnis ad Oricum*.—Cæs. B.C. iii. 8.

In the poets, *the names of countries*, also, are put as the object of a motion without a Preposition, e.g., *Italiam venit*.—Virgil. The poets also use national names, as well as common names in general, when considered as the object of a motion, in the Accusative, without a Preposition, e.g., *Ibimus Afros*.—Virgil, Ecl. i. 64.

The Accusatives *domum*—home, and *rus*—to the country—are constructed like the names of towns, e.g., *domum reverti*, *rus ire*; also *domos*, of several different homes, e.g., *ministerium restituentorum domos obsidum*.—Livy, xxii. 22.

3. The residing or happening in a place is denoted by the Ablative alone of the names of towns and smaller islands (which may be regarded as towns), if the names belong to the Third Declension, or are of the Plural Number: *Babylone habitare*; *Athenis litteris*.—*Madvig*. Chaps. ii., iv., v.
4. Dr. Smith (in his "Principia Latina," page 87) considers that what is generally supposed to be a Genitive of Place of the Second Declension, was, in reality, an old Dative of the same Declension. Thus, according to Dr. Smith, in the sentence, *Corinthis vixit*—he lived at Corinth—*Corinthis* would be the old Dative.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE I.

When a Substantive or Pronoun is connected with a Participle, and when neither of them depend on any other word in the same clause of the sentence, they are put in the Ablative Absolute; as,

Regibus exactis, consules creati sunt.—Livy.

The kings having been expelled, consuls were appointed.

Me duce, tutus eris.—Ovid.

You will be safe, under my guidance.

ANNOTATIONS.

1. In Latin, words *put absolutely* are in the *Ablative*. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute*.

The want of a Participle for the Perfect Active is supplied by the *Ablative Absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *Perfect* or *Pluperfect* Subjunctive. The *Perfect* Subjunctive must be used if the other Verb is in the *Present Tense*.—Arnold.

2. When a secondary clause contains a different subject from the subject of the principle clause, the Verb in the secondary clause is in Latin frequently changed into a Participle, and agrees with its subject in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute*; as,

Solē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt.

When the sun had risen, the Romans saw the enemy.

The Latin language possesses no *Perfect Participle Active*, except in the case of Deponent Verbs; hence in English the *Perfect Participle Active*, which agrees with the subject of the Verb, is in Latin put in the Ablative Case, together with its own object; as,

Cæsar, expōsitō exercitū ad hostēs contendit.

Cæsar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy.—Dr. Smith's *Principia Latina*.

3. As the *Perfect Participle* in Latin may be used for both the *Perfect Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles* in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connexion, the agent *a* or *ab* not being expressed after this Participle, as it usually is after the *Passive Voice*. Thus, *Cæsar, his dictis, concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, "Cæsar, *having said this*, or *this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly."

As the Perfect Participles of Deponent Verbs correspond to the Perfect Active Participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the Ablative Absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locûtus, concilium dimisit.* In the following example, both constructions are united:—*Itaque, agros Remorum depopulati omnibus vicis, ædificiisque incensis.*—*Professors Andrews and Stoddard.*

4. The Ablative Absolute is in general an abridged Adverbial sentence, either temporal, casual, conditional, or concessive; and the Participle may, therefore, be transformed into a Finite Verb, with a Conjunction. Thus, *regibus exactis*=*postquàm reges exacti sunt*; *Cæsare venturo*=*quando (or quia) Cæsar venturus est*; *Pereunte obsequio*=*si (or quum) perit obsequium.*

Sometimes the Absolute Participle is equivalent to the Gerund in *do*, or Ablative of manner; as, *Tarquinius Turnum oblato falso crimine oppressit.*—*Livy. Aruns Tarquinius et Tullia minor junguntur nuptiis, magis non prohibente Servio quàm approbante.*—*Livy.*

An Impersonal Participle is sometimes absolute; as, *Mihi, errato, nulla venia*; *rectè facto*=*quum rectè factum est a me.*

The most common instance of Absolute Substantives is that in which *consule* or *consulibus* is used; as, *Natus est Augustus, Cicerone et Antonio consulibus.*—*Suet. Caninio consule, scito neminem prandisse.*—*Cicero. Dr. Kennedy.*

5. In Latin, the Ablative is the case that is used absolutely. In Anglo-Saxon, the Absolute Case was the Dative. In the present English, the Nominative is the Absolute Case. — *Latham's English Language.*

CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.¹

RULE LI.

Impersonal Verbs generally govern the same Case which they would require, if used personally; as,

Me delectat.—*Livy.*
It delights me.

Mihi placet.—*Cicero.*
It pleases me.

¹ See also the Impersonal Verbs in this Grammar, page 146.

ANNOTATION.

The Personal Verb *delecto* governs an Accusative, therefore its Impersonal form, *delectat*, requires the same Case.—*Placet* is formed as if from *placeo*, which would govern a Dative. Several of the Impersonal Verbs have no equivalent Personal form, but, as a general Rule, they govern the same Cases as these corresponding Personal Verbs would have required.

RULE LII.

Impersonal Verbs generally govern the Accusative; but, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, and *placet*, govern the Dative; as,

Tibi licet.—Cicero.
It is lawful for you.

ANNOTATION.

The other Impersonal Verbs which are usually found with a Dative, are, *dolet*, it grieves; *expedit*, it is expedient; *conducit*, it is beneficial; *convēnit*, it is suitable; *accidit*, it happens.

RULE LIII.

Juvat, *delectat*, *dēcet*, and *dēdēcet*, require an Accusative along with an Infinitive; as,

Oratōrem irasci minime decet.—Cicero.
It by no means becomes an orator to be angry.

ANNOTATION.

These Verbs govern an Accusative, because they are derived from Personal Verbs which govern the Accusative.

RULE LIV

Oportet requires either an Accusative with an Infinitive, or a Nominative with the Subjunctive Mood; as,

Legem brevem esse oportet.—Cicero.
A law ought to be brief.

Me ipsum amare oportet, non mea.—Cicero.
You ought to love myself, and not my possessions.

ANNOTATION.

In the construction of this Nominative and Subjunctive, the Conjunction *ut* is understood; it is seldom expressed in this instance.

RULE LV.

Attinet and *Pertinet* are generally followed by an Accusative governed by *ad*; as,

Nihil ad me attinet.—Terence.
It is nothing to me.

Ad rempublicam pertinet.—Cicero.
It concerns the republic.

ANNOTATION.

By some writers, *spectat* also is classed under this Rule. It requires *ad* after it, on the same principle of construction as the Personal Verb *specto*.

RULE LVI.

Rēfert and *Interest* govern the Genitive; as,

Rēfert reipublicæ.—Livy.
It concerns the republic.

Interest omnium.—Cicero.
It is the interest of all.

ANNOTATION.

The Genitives of value — *Tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, and minoris*, are governed by these Verbs. Dr. Kennedy supplies the following clear and most judicious remarks with regard to the Personal Pronouns used in connexion with *refert* and *interest*:—"That the Prominal forms *mea, tua, &c.* (to which add *cujus*), which follow these Verbs, are Ablatives Singular (according to Priscian, Valla, and others), and not Accusatives Plural (according to Donatus, Scaliger, Sanctius, Scioppius, Perizonius, and Rhuddiman), seems clear, from the long *a* of these words in Terence. *Interest* is probably corrupted from *inre est*; and *rēfert* (not from *rēfero*) is compounded of *rē* and *fert*; and with this Ablative *rē* the Pronoun *mea, &c.*, agree."

RULE LVII.

Pudet, *p̃iget*, *tædet*, and *miseret*, govern the Accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a Genitive of the object of the feeling ; as,

Fratri me pudet.—Terence.
I am ashamed of my brother.

Eos ineptiarum pœnitet.—Cicero.
They repent of their folly.

Quem pœnitet peccasse, pœne est innocens.—Seneca.
The man who repents of his error is almost innocent.

ANNOTATION.

The Impersonal Verbs *pudet*, *pœnitet*, *piget*, *tædet*, and *miseret*, require the person who is the subject of the feeling to be in the Accusative Case, and the object which excites it to be in the Genitive. The object may also be expressed by the Indefinite Pronouns, or by a Proposition with *quod*, or with an interrogative Particle ; e. gr.,

Non pudet me hoc fecisse ; pœnitet me quod te offendi ; non pœnitet me quantum profecerim.

I am not dissatisfied with the proficiency which I have made.—*Zumpt*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

RULE LVIII.

Some Adverbs of *place*, *time* and *quantity*, govern the Genitive ; as,

Ubi gentium ?—Cicero.
Where in the world ?

Tunc temporis.—Cicero.
At that time.

ANNOTATIONS.

The Adverbs of place ; *ubi*, *ubicunque*, *usquam*, *nusquam* (*longe*), *unde*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*, *quo*, are joined with the Genitives *gentium*, *terrarum*, *loci*, *locorum*, and by that addition have their meaning strengthened. The Adverbs *huc*, *eo*, *quo*, take a Gen?

tive in the sense of degree; *hac arrogantiae venerat*, he had come to that degree of arrogance.

The Genitive seems to be pleonastically added in the following expressions, which denote a point of time: *tum temporis*, (Cicero) at that time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *ad id locorum*, (Sallust) up to that time.

Id temporis, and *id* or *hoc ætatis*, are used Adverbially, and without being governed, for *eo tempore*, *ea ætate*; e. gr. *venit ad me, et quidem id temporis*; *homo id ætatis*, a man of that age. (Tac. Ann. 12, 18. *Nemo id auctoritatis aderat*, for *ea auctoritate*.)

Latin poets, and the later prose writers who imitated them, frequently, instead of making the Adjective agree with the Substantive, put it in the Neuter Singular or Plural, and make the Substantive depend upon it in the Genitive: so Livy; *exiguum campi ante castra erat*, for *campus exiguus*; so medium, *extremum anni, ætatis*, &c. instead of which Cicero commonly says, *media ætas*. The Neuter Plural of Adjectives, in particular, is very frequently used in this manner.—*Zumpt*.

THE ORDER OF WORDS IN A SENTENCE.

As a general rule, a Latin sentence is constructed as follows:—The subject is placed first; then follow the oblique cases and the predicate; and the Verb closes the proposition—thus giving compactness to the period.

This arrangement, is, however, largely modified by the influence of two principles: the principle of, I. *Emphasis*, and the principle of, II. *Euphony*; and also by the style of the composition, whether historical, didactic, oratorical, or epistolary.

I. The emphatic word is commonly placed at the beginning, sometimes at the end, of the sentence.

II. The Verb is not allowed to close the sentence, if it interferes with euphony, e.g., "*Nemo pueris venenum dat bibendum*"—not "*bibendum dat*." Euphony also compels us to avoid alliteration, i.e., similar terminations of consecutive words, and, in general, to place the longer words *after* monosyllables.¹—*Wilkin's Latin Prose Composition*.

1. The advanced student will find valuable rules on this subject in the excellent work from which this brief extract is taken.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

(FROM PAGE 176 TO 204, INCLUSIVE.)

1. When two Verbs come together, in what Mood is the latter Verb put? Can you mention any of Latham's remarks with regard to the construction and inflection of the English Infinitive? Can you give any of the rules for the methods of rendering the word "*that*" into Latin, in connexion with the Infinitive and Subjunctive Moods? After what Verbs is the Infinitive Mood generally used?
2. Explain the nature of the Gerund. How are its Cases governed? When may the Gerund be changed into the Gerundive? Explain the government of the Gerundive in *dum* of the Nominative Case. Give some account of Zumpt's statement with regard to the Gerund and Gerundive.
3. Give the Rules for the Construction of the Supines, and mention any peculiarities which may occur to you with regard to their construction. What other methods of construction may be employed instead of the Supine in *um*?
4. Give the principal Rules for the Accusative Case after the Verb. Give the principal Rules for the Dative Case after the Verb. Give the principal Rules for the Genitive Case after the Verb, and also for the Ablative Case. Mention some peculiarities with regard to the construction of each of these cases. In what Cases may the "Price" of a thing be expressed, and under what restrictions?
5. Give the Rules for the Construction of Time. Give the Rules for the Construction of Place. Explain the nature of the Ablative Absolute. Give the principal Rules for the Construction of Impersonal Verbs. Give the Rules for the Construction of Adverbs. Mention any peculiarities which may occur to you with regard to each of these Rules.

PROSODY.

Prosody is that part of Grammar which treats of the quantity, or proper pronunciation, of syllables.

The quantity of a syllable is either *long*, marked thus- ; or *short*, thus~ ; or *common*, i. e. either long or short.

A *foot* consists of two or more syllables ; and a *verse* of a number of feet, combined according to certain rules.

A foot consisting of two long syllables is called a *spondee* ; as, *fēlix*.

A foot of one long and two short syllables is called a *dactyl* ; as, *scribēřě*.

Scanning a verse, means measuring or dividing it into separate feet, according to the rules of Prosody.

The quantity of the last syllable of every verse is common.

THE RULES OF ALVAREZ' LATIN PROSODY.

RULE I.

A VOWEL BEFORE A VOWEL.

Vocalem breviant, alia subeunte Latini;
 Produc (ni sequitur *r*) *fio*, et nomina quintæ,
 Quæ geminos casus, *e* longo, assumit in *ēi*;
 (Verum *e* corripunt *fidēique*, *spēique*, *rēique*)
 Et patrium primæ qui sese solvit in *āi*.
Ius commune est vati; producito *alius*;
Alterius varia; *Pompēi* et cætera produc.
 Protrahiturque *ēheu*; sed *io* variatur et *ohe*.
 Nomina Græcorum certa sine lege vagantur;
 Quædam etenim longis, ceu *Dia*, *Chorēa*, *Platēa*,
 Quædam etiam brevibus, veluti *Symphoniā*, gaudent.

Obs. In the seventh line of this Rule, Alvarez wrote *Alterius brevia*. But he was wrong, as has been satisfactorily shown by the best Prosodians. The *i* in *Alterius* is common; I have therefore altered the text according to the modern editions of Alvarez.

RULE II.

DIPHTHONGS.

Diphthongus longa est in Græcis atque Latinis;
Præ brevis est, si compositum vocalibus anteit.

Obs. All contracted Syllables are also long; thus *coāgo* is contracted into *cōgo*.

RULE III.

POSITION.

Vocalis longa est, si consona bina sequatur,
 Aut duplex, aut *I* vocalibus interjectum.

Obs. The Vowel before *j* is short in *bijugus*, and the other compounds of *jugum*.

* * * I have carefully tested the soundness of these Rules of Alvarez, and have introduced some important emendations (which are noticed in their respective places), on the authority of Dr. Carey and other eminent Prosodians. However, I do not lay any claim to originality in introducing these improvements; several of them have already appeared in other Prosodies.

RULE IV.

EXCEPTION TO "POSITION," WITH RESPECT TO MUTES
AND LIQUIDS.

Si mutam liquidamque simul brevis una prævit :
 Contrahit orator, variant in carmine vates.
 Sed si longa præit, semper tibi longa manebit.
 Quæ brevis est tantum natura, dicitur anceps.

Obs. *L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* are regarded as liquids in Greek words only. In the application of this rule, the vowel must be naturally short, the mute must come before the liquid, and both mute and liquid must belong to the syllable following the vowel.

RULE V.

DISSYLLABIC PRÆTERITES.

Præterita assumunt primam dissyllaba longam,
Sto, do, scindo, fero, rapiunt, bibo, findo priores.

Obs. *Abscidi*, from *scindo*, has the penultimate short; *abscidi*, from *cædo* has the penultimate long.

RULE VI.

REDUPLICATED PRÆTERITES.

Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque ;
 Ut *pario, pēpēri*; vetet id nisi consona bina ;
Cædo, cecidit habet longa (ceu *pedo*) secunda.

Obs. The second syllable often becomes long by position; as, *pēpēndi*.

RULE VII.

DISSYLLABIC SUPINES.

Cuncta supina volunt primam dissyllaba longam ;
 At *reor et cieo, sero, et ire, sinoque, linoque,*
Do, queo, et orta ruo, breviabunt rite priores.

Obs. *Citum*, from *cio*, of the Fourth Conjugation, has the first syllable long; hence, *excitūs*. *Citum*, from *cieo*, shortens the first syllable; hence, *excitūs*.

RULE VIII.

POLYSYLLABIC SUPINES.

Utum producunt polysyllaba cuncta supina.
Ivi præterito semper producitur *itum*.
 Cætera corripias in *itum* quæcunque supina.

RULE IX.

DERIVATIVES.

Derivata patris naturam verba sequuntur ;
Mobilis et *fômes*, *lâterna* ac *rêgula*, *sêdes*,
 Quanquam orta e brevibus, gaudent producere primam.
 Corripiuntur *ârista*, *vâdum*, *sôpor* atque *lûcerna*,
 Nata licet longis ; usus te plura docebit.

Obs. The Desiderative Verbs in *ûrio* have the *u* before *r* short, although derived from the Participle in *ûrus*, which has the *û* long.

RULE X.

COMPOUNDS.

Legem simplicium retinent composita suorum ;
 Vocalem licet, aut diphthongum, syllaba mutet.
Dejêro corripies, cum *pejêro* et *innûba*, necnon
Pronûba, *fatidîcum* et socios, cum *semisôpîtus*,
 Queis, etiam *nihîlum*, cum *cognîtus*, *agnîtus* hærent.
 Longam *imbêcillus*, verbumque *ambîtus*, amabit.

Obs. The Substantive *ambîtus* has the *i* short.

RULE XI.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

Longa *a*, *de*, *e*, *se*, *di* præter *dîrimo* atque *dîsertus*.
 Sit *re* breve ; at *rêfert a res* producito semper.
 Corripe *pro* Græcum ; sed produc rite Latinum.
 Contrahe quæ *fundus fugio*, *neptisque*, *neposque*
 Et *festus*, *fari*, *fateor*, *fanumque* crearunt ;
 Hisce *prôfecto* addes, pariterque *prôcella*, *prôtervus*,

At primam variant *propago*, *propino*, *profundo*,¹
Propulso, *procuro*, *propello*, *Proserpina* junge.
 Corripe *ab*, et reliquas, obstat id nisi consona bina.

RULE XII.

A, E, AND I, IN COMPOSITION.

- Produc *a* semper, compositi parte priore ;
 At simul *e*, simul *i*, ferme breviare memento.
Nēquidquam produc, *Nēquando*, *Venēfica*, *Nēquam*,
Nēquaquam, *nēquis* sociosque, *videlicet* addes.
Idem masculineum produc, et *siquis*, *ibidem*.
Scilicet, et *bijæ*, *tibicen*, *ubique*, *quadrigæ*,
Bimus, *tantūdem*, *quīdam*, et composita *diēi*.

Obs. The *i* in *ubi* is common. *Ubique* always has the *i* long ; but *ubivis* has the *i* common.

RULE XIII.

O IN COMPOSITION.

Græcum *o* (micron) prima compositi corripe parte,
O mega produces, partem dum claudit eandem ;
O Latium in variis breviat, vel protrahit usus.

Obs. In Latin compound words, *o* is sometimes long ; as, *quandōque* ; and sometimes short, as *quandōquidem*.

RULE XIV.

THE INCREMENTS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Casibus obliquis vix crescit prima. Secunda
 Corripit incrementa : tamen producit Ibēri.

Obs. There is no increment in the First Declension, except the old Genitive form *ai* (as *aulai*) in which the *a* is long by the first rule.

1. These two lines are Dr. Carey's emendation. Alvarez was wrong in writing—

“ Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis,
Propino varias, verbum *propago*, *profundo*.”

Propago in all its meanings has the first Syllable common.

RULE XV.

THE INCREMENT OF *A* IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Nominis *a* crescens, quod flectit tertia, longum est ;
 Mascula corripies *ar* et *al* finita : simulque
Par, cum compositis, *hepar*, cum *nectare bacchar* ;
 Cum *vāde*, *mas* et *anas*, cui junge *laremque*, *jabarque*.

RULE XVI.

THE INCREMENT IN *A*, *AS*, AND *X*.

A quoque, et *as* Græcum, breve postulat incrementum
S quoque finitum si consona ponitur ante,
 Et *dropax*, *anthrax*, *atraz*, cum *smilæce climax* ;
 Adde *Atācem*, *panācem*, *colācem*, *styrācemque*, *fācemque*,
 Atque *abācem*, *corācem*, *phylācem* compostaque, et *harpax*.

Obs. The last line is Dr. Carey's emendation. Juvenal, Ovid, Propertius, and Silviuſ Italicus, always make the *a* in *syphācem* long. The supposition that the *a* in this word is short, is founded upon a solitary passage in Claudian, in which the reading is generally condemned as incorrect.

RULE XVII.

THE INCREMENT IN *E*.

E crescens, numero breviabit Tertia primo.
 Præter *Iber*, patriosque *enis* (sed contrahit Hymen).
Ver, *mansues*, *locuples*, *hæres*, *mercesque*, *quiesque* ;
Lex, *vervex*, *præs*, cum *seps*, *plebs*, *rex*, insuper *halec*,
El peregrinum : *Es*, *Er* Græcum, *Æthère*, et *Aere*
 demptis.

RULE XVIII.

THE INCREMENT IN *I* OR *Y*.

I crescens, numero breviabit Tertia primo ;
 Græca sed in Patrio casu *inis* et *ynis* adoptant,
 Et *lis*, *glis*, *Samnis Dis*, *gryps*, *Nisisque*, *Quirisque*,
 Cum *vibice*, simul longa incrementa reposcunt.

-

RULE XIX.

THE INCREMENT OF WORDS ENDING IN *IX* AND *YX*.

IX (vel *YX*) produc, breviato *Histrīx*, cum *Fornīce*, *Varī*
Cocendix, *Chæniæque*, *Cilis*, *Natriæque*, *Calixque*,
Phryxque, *Lariæ* et *Onyx*, *Pix*, *Nixque*, *Salixque*, *Filiæque*,
Mastichis his et *Eryx*, *Calycisque* et *Iapygis* addes ;
 Quæque ultra invenias ; *Bebryx* variare memento.

RULE XX.

THE INCREMENT IN *O*.

O crescens numero producimus usque priore.
O parvum in Græcis brevia ; producito magnum.
Ausonius genitivus *ōris*, quem neutra dedere,
 Corripitur ; propria huic junges, ut *Nestor* et *Hector*.
Os ōris, mediosque gradus, extende ; sed *arbos*,
 Πούρ composta, *lepus*, memor, et *bos*, *compos* et *impos*,
 Corripe *Cappadōcem* *Allobrōgem*, cum *Præcoce*, et *obs*, *ops*.
 Verum produces *Cercops*, *Hydropsque*, *Cyclopsque*.

Obs. Mistakes frequently occur in Prosodies with regard to the word *cercops*, "an ape," in the last line ; *cecrops* (the proper name) being often erroneously substituted for it. The increment *o* in *cercops*, "an ape," is long ; the increment in *o* of *cecrops* (the proper name) is short.

RULE XXI.

THE INCREMENT IN *U*.

U brevia incrementa feret ; sed casus in *Uris*,
Udis et *Utis*, ab *Us* recto, producitur ; et *fur*,
Lux, *Pollux*. Brevia *intercusque*, *pecusque*, *Ligusque*.

PLURAL INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE XXII.

PLURAL INCREMENT IN *A, E, I, O, U*.

Pluralis casus, si crescit, protrahit *a, e*,
Atque *o*. Corripies, *i, u*; verum excipe *būbus*.

Obs. All the poets, with the exception of Ausonius, make the first *u* in *būbus* long.

THE INCREMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXIII.

A IN THE INCREMENTS OF VERBS.

A crescens produc, *do* incremento excipe primo.

Obs. The first Increment in *a* of *do* is short, but the second Increment is long; as, *dābātis*.

RULE XXIV.

E IN THE INCREMENTS OF VERBS.

E quoque producunt verba increscentia. Verum
Prima *e* corripunt ante *r* duo tempora ternæ;
Dic *-bēris* atque *-bēre*; at *-rēris* producito *-rēre*.
Sit brevis *e*, quando *ram, rim, ro*, adjuncta sequuntur.
Corripit interdum *statērunt dedēruntque* poeta.

Obs. When *b* belongs to the root of the Verb (as in Verbs in *bo* of the Third Conjugation), the Penultimates of the First Future Indicative Passive are long; as, *scribēris, scribēre*.

RULE XXV.

I IN THE INCREMENT OF VERBS.

Corripit *i* crescens verbum, sed deme *velimus*,
Nolimus simus, quæque hinc composta dabuntur;
Ivi præteritum, præsens quartæ *imus* et *itis*,
Ri conjunctivum possunt variare poetæ.

Obs. Donaldson, and other eminent authorities, are of opinion that the *i* of *rimus* and *ritis* in the Perfect and Future Subjunctive should be considered as long.

RULE XXVI.

O AND U IN THE INCREMENT OF VERBS.

O incrementum produc; *u* corripe semper,
U fit in extremo penultima longa futuro.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

RULE XXVII.

FINAL A.

A finita dato longis. *Ită*, *postĕa* deme,
Eiă, *quă* et casus omnes; sed protrahe sextum,
 Productis Græcos casus adjuuge vocandi.

Obs. The word *contra* and *numerals* in *ginta*, generally have the final *a* long.

RULE XXVIII.

FINAL E.

E brevia; primæ quintæque vocabula produc,
Cetĕ, *ohĕ*, *Tempĕ*, *fermĕ*que, *ferĕ*que, *famĕ*que;
 Adde *docĕ* similemque modum; monosyllaba, præter
 Encliticas et syllabicas; necnon (*malĕ* demto
 Ac *benĕ*) produces adverbia cuncta secundæ.

Obs. *Infernĕ* and *supernĕ* have also the final *e* short.

RULE XXIX.

FINAL I AND Y.

I produc; brevia nisi cum quasi; Græcaque cuncta,
Jure mihi variare tibi, sibi, soleamus.
Sed mage corripies ibi, ubi, dissyllabon et cui.
Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi* vates.

Obs. Dr. Carey considers that *uti* also has the final syllable common.

RULE XXX.

FINAL O.

O datur ambiguis; Græca et monosyllaba longis;
Ergo pro *causa*; ternus sextusque secundæ;
Atque adeo ac *ideo*; adde adverbia nomine nata;
Sed cito corripies, *modo*que et *scio*, *nescio* et *imo*,
Et duo; sit varium *sero* et conjunctio *vero*.

Obs. The best poets, with few exceptions, generally make the final *o* long; as, *amō*.

RULE XXXI.

FINAL U, B, D, T.

U semper produc—*b, d, t*, corripe semper.

Obs. The Vowel before the final *t* in the Preterite is long, when Syncope or Crasis occurs; as, *audit* for *audiit*, which is syncopated for *audivit*.

RULE XXXII.

FINAL C.

C longum est. Varium hic pronomen; corripe *donec*,
Et nec; fac pariter malunt brevare poetæ.¹

RULE XXXIII.

FINAL L.

Corripe *l*; at produc *sul*, *sol*, *nīl*, multaque *Hebraea*.

1. This Rule is thus given by Dr. Carey:—

“*C* longum est,—Brevia *nec, fac, quibus* adice *donec*.
Hic pronomen, et *hac* primo et quarto variabis.”

RULE XXXIV.

FINAL *M*.

M vorat Ecthlipsis : prisci breviare solebant,

RULE XXXV.

FINAL *N*.

N longum est Graecis pariter, pariterque Latinis.
En brevia, quod format *inis* breve ; Graeca secundae,
 Jungimus, et quartum, si sit brevis ultima recti.
Forsitān, *in*, *forsān*, *tamēn*, *ān*, *vidēn'*, adjice curtis.

RULE XXXVI.

FINAL *R*.

R breve ; sed longum est *fūr*, *pār*, cum pignore, *Lār*, *nār*,
Cūr, *fār* ; cum Graecis queis, patrius *eris* ; et *æthēr*,
Aēr, *vēr*, et *Ibēr* : sit *cōr* breve ; *Celtiber* anceps.

RULE XXXVII.

FINAL *AS*.

As produc. Quartum Græcorum tertia casum
 Corripit : et rectum, per *adis* si patrius exit.

Obs. The word *anās* (a duck), which always has the *a* short, is inserted in this Rule according to the judicious emendation of Dr. Carey.

RULE XXXVIII.

FINAL *ES*.

Es dabitur longis ; breviat sed tertia rectum,
 Cum patrii brevis est crescens penultima.—*Pēs* hinc
 Excipitur, *pariēs*, *ariēs*, *abiēs*que, *cerēs*que.
 Corripe et *ēs* de *sum*, *penēs* et neutralia Græca.
 His quintum et rectum numeri dent Græca secundi.

RULE XXXIX.

FINAL *IS* OR *YS*.

Corripies *is* et *ys*; plurales excipe casus;
Glis, sis, vis, verbum ac nomen, *nolisque, velisque*;
Audis cum sociis; quorum et Genitivus in *inis*,
Entisve, aut *itis* longum, producito semper.
Ris conjunctivum possunt variare poetæ.

RULE XL.

FINAL *OS*.

Vult *os* produci; *compôs* breviatur et *impôs*,
Osque ossis, Græcorum et neutra; his cuncta secundæ
 Addicta Ausonidum junges, patriosque Pelasgos.

RULE XLI.

FINAL *US*.

Us breve ponatur; produc monosyllaba, quæque
 Casibus increscunt longis, et nomina quartæ
 (Exceptis recto et quinto), et quibus exit in *Untis*,
 Patrius, et conflata a *ποὺς*, contractaque Græca
 In recto ac patrio, et venerandum nomen Iesus.

Obs. In some editions of Horace, in "Arte Poeticâ," line 65, the final *us* of *palus* is found short:—

Regis opus, sterilisque diu palus aptaque remis.

In order to remedy this, Bentley substitutes *palus prius* instead of *diu palus*.

RULE XLII.

THE LENGTHENING OF A FINAL SYLLABLE BY POETIC LICENSE.

Correpta Ausonii quædam monosyllaba Vates
 Nonnunquam extendunt, Græcorum exempla secuti.

Obs. This should probably be attributed to the force of the Cæsura.

RULE XLIII.

THE FINAL SYLLABLE IN A VERSE.

Syllaba cujusvis est ultima carminis anceps.

Obs. In consequence of the pause at the end of every verse, the last syllable is necessarily long, by its very position.

THE RULES OF ALVAREZ CONSTRUED.

I. *Latini* the Latin Poets, *breviant* shorten, *vocalem* a vowel, *alia subeunte* when another vowel follows it. *Produc* make long, *fio* the *i* in *fio*, *ni sequitur r* unless when *r* follows it, *et Nomina Quintæ* and Nouns of the Fifth Declension, *quæ* which, *assumit* forms, *geminos casus* two cases, *in ei*, in *ei*, *e longo*, *e* being long in each case. *Verum* but, *que* both, *fidei*, *que*, and *spei*, *que*, and *rei*, *corripiunt* shorten *e*—*et patrium*, and the old Genitive, *primæ* of the First Declension, *qui sese solvit* which is resolved into, *ai* has the *a* long—*ius est* the *i* in *ius* is, *commune* common, *vati* to the poet, *i.e.*, *i* in *ius* is long or short, according as the poet wishes. *Producito* make long, *alius* the *i* in *alius*; *varia* vary, *alterius* the *i* in *alterius*; *Produc* make long, *Pompei* the *e* in *Pompei*, *et cætera*, and all other Vocative Cases ending in *i*, with a vowel preceding—*que* and *eheu* the first *e* in *eheu*, *protrahitur* is made long; *sed* but, *io* the *i* in *io*, *et* and, *ohe* the *o* in *ohe*, *variatur* is common—*Nomina Græcorum* Greek Nouns, *vagantur* wander, *sine* without, *certa lega* a fixed law, *etenim* for, *quædam* some, *gaudent longis* require long vowels before another, *ceu* as, *dia*, *chorea*, *platea*: *etiam* also, *quædam* some of them, *gaudent brevibus* require short vowels before another, *veluti* as, *symphonia*.

II. *Diphthongus* a diphthong, *est* is, *longa* long, *in Græcis* in Greek, *atque* and *Latinis* Latin words: *Præ* the Preposition *præ*, *est brevis* is short, *si* if, *compositum* being compounded, *anteit* it goes before, *vocalibus* vowels.

III. *Vocalis* a vowel, *est* is, *longa* long, *si* if, *consona bina* two consonants, *sequatur* follow it, *aut* or *duplex* a double consonant, *aut* or, *j*, *interjectum* placed between, *vocalibus* two vowels.

IV. *Si* if, *una brevis*, one short vowel, *prævit* has gone before, *mutam* a mute, *que* and, *liquidam* a liquid; *simul* at the

same time, *orator* the prose writer, *contrahit* shortens it; *vates* the poets, *variant* make it common, in *carmine* in verse. *Sed* si but if, *longa* a long vowel, *præit* goes before, i.e., a mute and a liquid; *manebit* it will continue, *semper tibi longa*, always long: *Quæ* that vowel which, *neque longa, brevis*, is neither long nor short, *natura* by nature, *dicitur* is called, *anceps* doubtful.

V. *Præterita* preterites, *dissyllaba* of two syllables, *assumunt* have, *primam* the first syllable, *longam* long; *sto, do, scindo, fero, bibo, findo, rapiunt* make short, *priorēs*, the first syllables of their preterites.

VI. *Præteritum* a preterite, *geminans* doubling, *primam* its first letter, *breviabit* will make short, *utramque* both the first and second syllable, *ut as, pario, peperī; nisi* unless, *бина consona* two consonants, *vetet* prevent it. *Cædo, habet* has, *cecidit, secunda* the second syllable, *longa* being long, *cæu as, pepo pepēdi*.

VII. *Cuncta supina* all supines, *dissyllaba* of two syllables, *volunt* require, *primam* the first syllable, *longam* long. *At* but, *reor, et* and *cicco, sero, et* and, *ira, que* and, *sino, que* and, *lino, do, queo, et* and, *orta ruo* the compounds of *ruo*, *breviabit* will duly make short, *priorēs* the first syllables of their Supines.

VIII. *Cuncta supina* all supines, *polysyllaba* of more than two syllables, *utum* which end in, *utum, producunt* make long *u* in the penultimate. The letter *i* in a supine ending in *itum, ivi præterito* formed from a præterite ending in *ivi, semper producitur* is always made long. *Corripias* make short *i, cætera quæcunque supina*, in all other supines, in *itum* which end in *itum*.

IX. *Derivata verba* derived words, *sequuntur* follow, *naturam* the nature, *patris* of their primitives. *Mobilis, et* and, *fomes, laterna, ac* and, *regula, sedes, quanquam* although, *orta* derived, *e brevibus* from words whose first syllables are short, *quædant* require, *producere* to make long, *primam* their first syllable. *Arista, vadum, sopor, atque* and, *lucerna, corripuntur* shorten the first syllable, *licet* although, *nata* derived, *longis* from words whose first syllable is long. *Usus* experience, *docebit te* will teach you, *plura* more exceptions.

X. *Composita* compound words, *retinent* retain, *legem* the laws or quantities, *simplicium suorum* of their simples, *licet* although, *syllaba*, a syllable, *mutet* may change, *vocalem* a

vowel, *aut* or, *diphthongum* a diphthong. *Corripies* you shall make short, the *je* in *dejero*, *cum* along with, the *je* in *pejer*. *et* and, the *nu* in *innūba*, *nec non* also, the *nu* in *pronuba*; and the *di* in *fatidicum*, *et socios* and in all similar compounds: *cum* together with, *semisopitus*. *Queis* to which, *etiam* also the *hi* in *nihilum*, *cum* along with, the *ni* in *cognitus*, the *ni* in *agnitus*, *hærent* adhere. *Imbecillus*, *que* and, *ambitus*, *verbum* derived from the verb, *amabit* will have, *longam*, a long penultimate.

XI. A, DE, E, SE, DI, *longa*, are long in composition; *præter* except, the *di* in *dirimo*; *atque* and, the *di* in *disertus*. *Sit re breve*, let the Preposition *re* be short; *at* but, *semper* always, *producito* make long the *re* in *refert*; *a res* derived from *res*. *Corripe* shorten, *pro* *Græcum* the Greek *pro*; *sed* but, *rite* *produc* duly make long, *Latinum* the Latin *pro*. *Contrahe* shorten *pro* in these words; *quæ* which, *fundus*, *fugio*, *que* and, *neptis*, *que* and, *nepos*, *et* and *festus*, *fari*, *fateor*, *que* and, *fanum*, *crearunt* have produced. *Addes* you shall add, *hisce* to these, the *pro* in *perfecto*; *que* and, *pariter* in the same manner, the *pro* in *procella*, the *pro* in *protervus*; *at* but, *propago*, *propino*, *profundo*, *varian* *primam* have the first syllable common. *Junge* join, *propulso*, *procurso*, *propello*, *proserpina*. *Corripe* shorten, *ab* the proposition *ab*, *et reliquas* and the other Prepositions, *nisi* unless, *consona bina* two consonants, *i.e.*, position, *obstet* prevent it.

XII. *Semper* always, *produc a* make *a* long, *parte priore* in the last syllable of the first part, *composti* of a compounded word; *at* but, *memento* remember, *ferme* generally, *breviare* to make short, *simul e* both *e*, *simul i* and *i* in the same part of the compound word. *Produc* make long the *ne* in *nequidquam*, *nequando*, *venefica*, *nequam*, *nequaquam*, *nequis*, *que*, and *socios*, in their inflections: *addes* you shall add, the *de* in *videlicet*. *Produc* make long, *i* in *idem*, *masculum* when masculine, *et* and, *si* in *siquis*, *bi* in *ibidem*, *sci* in *scilicet*, *et* and, *bi* in *bijæ*, *tibicen*; *dri* in *quadrigæ*, *bi* in *bimus*, *ti* in *tantidem*, *qui* in *quidam*, *et composita diei*, and the last syllable of the first part of the compounds of *dies*.

XIII. *Corripe* make short, *Græcum omicron* the Greek omicron, *prima parte* in the last syllable of the first part, *composti* of a compounded word; *produces omega* you shall make long the Greek omega, *dum* when, *claudit* it closes,

eandem partem the same part of the compound; *usus* custom, *breviat* makes short, *vel* or, *protrahit* makes long, *O* *Latium* the Latin *O*, in *variis* in various compound words.

XIV. *Prima* the First Declension, *vix crescit* scarcely increases, *casibus obliquis* in its oblique cases; *secunda* the Second Declension, *corripit* makes short, *incrementa* its increase, *tamen* yet, *producit* it makes long, *be* in *Ibēri*, the Genitive of *Iber*.

XV. *A crescens* a increasing, *nominis* in a Noun, *quod flectit tertia* which the Third Declension inflects, *est longum* is long. *Corripies* you shall shorten, *mascula* the increase of masculine Nouns, *finita ar et al* ending in *ar* and *al*, *simulque* and at the same time, the increase of, *par*, *cum compositis* along with its compounds, the increase of *hepar*, *cum* with, the increase of *nectar*, the increase of *bacchar*; *cum* together with, the increase of *vas*, *mas*, *et* and, *anas*; *cui* to which, *junge* join, *que* both, the increase of *lar*, *que* and, *jubar*.

XVI. *A quoque et as Græcum* also the Greek termination *a* and *as*, *postulat* requires, *breve incrementum* a short increase; *quoque* also, *finitum* a Noun ending in *s*, *si* if, *consona* a consonat, *ponitur ante* is placed before *s*; *et* and, *dropax*, *anthrax*, *atraz*; *cum* with, *smilax*, *climax*, require a short increment. *Nectes* you shall join, *his* to these, *atacem*, *panacem*, *colacem*, *que* and, *styracem*, *que* and, *facem*. *Atque* and, *abacem*, *coracem*, *phylacem*, *compostaque* and its compounds.

XVII. *Tertia* the Third Declension, *breviabit* will make short, *e crescens*, *e* the increase, *primo numero* in the singular number, *præter* except, the increase of, *Iber*, *que* and, *patrios*, *e* in Genitive Cases ending in *enis* *sed* but, *Hymen contrahit* Hymen shortens its increment. *Ver*, *mansues*, *locuples*, *hæras*, *que* and, *merces*, *que* and, *quies*, *lex*, *vervex*, *præs*, *cum* along with, *seps*, *plebs*, *rex insuper* besides, *halec* have the increase long; *el peregrinum* so also Hebrew Nouns ending in *el*; *es*, *er*, *Græcum* also Greek Nouns ending in *es* and *er*, the *e* in *æthere*, *et* and, *e* in *aere*, *demptis* being excepted.

XVIII. *Tertia* the third declension, *breviabit* will shorten; *I crescens* the *i* increasing, *primo numero* in the singular number; *sed* but, *Græca* Greek nouns, *adoptant* adopt, in

patrio in the genitive, the *i* and *y* of *inis*, *et* and, *ynis*, *longam* long. *Et* and, *lis*, *glis*, *Samnis*, *Dis*, *gryps*, *que* and, *Nisis*, *que* and, *Quiris*, *cum* together with, *vibice*, *simul* *reposcunt* at the same time demand, *longa incrementa* long increments.

XIX. *Produc* make long, the increment *i* and *y* of nouns ending in *ix*, *atque* and, *yx*; *breviato* make short, the increments of *histrix*, *cum* along with, *fornice*, *varix*, *cozendix*, *que* and, *chaenix*, *cilix*, *que* and, *natrix*, *que* and, *calix*, *que* and, *phryx*, *larix* *et* and, *onyx*, *pix*, *que* and, *nix*, *que* and, *salix*, *que* and, *filix*; *addes* you shall add, his to these, *masticis* the increments of, *mastix*, *et* and, *eryx*, *que* and, *calycis*, *et* and, *japygis*, *quæque ultra invenias* and whatever other similar words you may find; *variare memento* remember to make the increment of *bebryx* long or short.

XX. *Usque producimus* we always make long, *O*, *crescens* increasing, *priore numero* in the singular number. *Brevia* make short, *O parvum* the Green omicron, in *Græcis* in Greek Nouns; *producito* make long, *magnum* the omega. *Ausonius Genetivus oris* the Latin Genitive in *oris*, *quem neutra dedere* which Nouns of the Neuter Gender have formed, *corripitur* is made short; *junges* you shall join, *huic* to this, *propria* proper names, *ut* as, *Nestor*, *et* and, *Hector*; *extende* make long, *o* in *os oris*, *mediosque gradus* and in adjectives of the Comparative Degree; *sed* but, *corripe* make short the increments of *arbos*, *composita* the compounds, of *ποῦς* *lepus*, *memor*, *et* and, *obs ops*. *Verum* but, *produces* you shall make long the increments of *cercops*, *que* and, *hydrops*, *que* and, *Cyclops*.

XXI. A Noun ending in *u*, *feret* will have, *brevia incrementa* short increments: *sed* but, *casus in uris* the case (i.e., the Genitive ending) in *uris*, *udis*, *et* and, *utis*, *ab us recto* from a Nominative in *us*, *producitur* is made long; *et* and *fur*, *lux*, *pollus* have long increments; *brevia* make short the increment of, *que* both, *intercus*, *que* and, *pecus*, *que* and, *ligus*.

XXII. *Pluralis casus* a plural case, *si crescit* if it increases, *protrahit* makes long, *a*, *e*, *atque* and, *O corripies* you shall make short the increments of *i*, *u*; *verum excipe* but except the first *u* in *bubus*.

XXIII. *Produc* make long, *a crescens* increasing in a Verb. *Excipe* do except the Verb *do*, *incremento primo* in its first increment.

XXIV. *Quoque* also, *Verba increscentia* Verbs increasing, *producunt e*, make *e* long; *verum* but, *prima duo tempora* the two first Tenses, *Tertiæ* of the Third Conjugation, *corripiunt e*, *ante r*, make short *e* before *r*. *Dic beris atque bere*, pronounce *be* short in *beris* and *bere*; *at reris producito rere* but pronounce *re* long in *reris* and *rere*. *Sit brevis e* let *e* be short, *quando* when, *ram, rim, ro, adjuncta sequuntur*, follow close after it. *Poeta* the Poet, *interdum corripit* sometimes makes short the penultimate in *steterunt, que* and, in *dederunt*.

XXV. *Corripit i crescens Verbum*, a Verb increasing makes *i* short; *sed* but, *deme* except, *li* in *velimus, nolimus, si* in *simus, quæque hinc composita dabuntur* and whatever will be the compounds of it. *Ivi præteritum*, a Preterperfect Tense ending in *ivi* has the penultima long, *Præsens quartæ imus et itis* the Present Tense of the Fourth Conjugation has *i* long in *imus* and *itis*: *poetæ* the poets, *possunt variare* can vary or change the quantity of, *ri conjunctivum*, *ri* in the Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

XXVI. *Produc* make long, *O incrementum* O the increment of a Verb; *Semper* always, *corripe* make short, *u* the increment; *u penultima*, *u* being the last syllable but one, *sit longa* is made long, *in extremo futuro* in the Participle of the Future Tense in *rus*.

XXVII. *Dato* give, *a finita*, the termination of words ending in *a*, *longis* to long ones, *i.e.*, make long *a* in the end of a word. *Deme* except the *a* in *ita, postea, eia, quia, et casus omnes*, and the final *a* in all cases of Nouns, *sed* but, *protrahe* make long, *sextum* the final *a* in the Ablative; *adjunge* add to this, *Græcos Casus vocandi* Greek Vocative Cases, *productos* made long in their final syllable.

XXVIII. *E brevია* make short *e* at the end of a word; *produc Vocabula* make long *e* in the end of words; *primæ quinquæque* of the First and Fifth Declension; *cete, ohe, tempe, fermeque, fereque, fameque*, make long *e* in the end of these words, *adde doce*, add the *ce* in *doce, similemque modum*, and the final *e* in the same mode of Verbs of the Second Conjugation: *monosyllaba* words of one syllable ending in *e*, *præter encliticas ac syllabicas* except the enclitics *que, ne, ve*, and the syllabics *pte, ce, te nec, non*; also *produces* you shall make long the final *e* in, *cuncta adverbia* all Adverbs formed from *secundæ*, Nouns Adjectives of three terminations, *male dempto ac bene*, except the final *e* in *male* and *bene*.

XXIX. *I produc* make long *i* in the end of a word. *Brevia* make short the final *i* in *nisi*, *cum* with, *quasi*, *Græcæque cuncta*, and all Greek Nouns. *Jure solemus variare* we usually render common the final syllables of *mihi*, *que* and, *tibi*, *que* and, *sibi*; *sed mage corripies* but you shall rather make short the final syllable in *ibi*, *ubi*, *et* and *cui*, *dissyllabon* when it forms two syllables, *sed* but, *vates* the poets, *breviant* make short the last syllables of *sicuti*, *cum* with, *necubi*, and *sicubi*.

XXX. *O datur ambiguus* the termination *o* is given to doubtful endings, *i.e.*, *o* in the end of a word is doubtful. *Græca, et monosyllaba longis* the termination of Greek Nouns and monosyllables in *o* is long; *ergo pro causa* so is the termination of *ergo* when it signifies a cause; *ternus, sextusque secundæ* and the Dative and Ablative of Nouns of the Second Declension. *Atque*, and the termination of *adeo*, *ac* and *ideo*; *adde* add the terminations of, *Adverbia* Adverbs, *Nomine nata* derived from Nouns; *sed* but, *corripies*, you shall make short the final syllable in *cito*, *que* and, *modo*, *et* and, *scio*, *nescio*, *imo*, *et* and, *duo*; *sit varium sero*, *et conjunctio vero* let the *o* in *sero* and the Conjunction *vero* be common.

XXXI. *U semper produc* always make long *u* in the end of a word. *B, t, d, corripe semper* always make short the vowel before these letters in the end of a word.¹

XXXII. *C longum est*, *c* in the end of a word is long; *varium hic pronomen*, *c* in the pronoun *hic* is doubtful; *corripe* make it short in *donec*, *et* and, *nec*; *pariter* in like manner, *poetæ* the poets, *malunt* choose rather, *breviare fac* to make short the *c* in *fac*.

XXXIII. *Corripe l* make short *l* in the end of a word; *at* but, *produc* make it long in *sal*, *sol*, *nil*, *que* and, *multa Hebræa* in many Hebrew words.

XXXIV. *M vorat ecthlipsis* the figure ecthlipsis swallows up *m. i. e.*, *m* is cut off before a vowel; *Prisci* the Ancients, *breviare solebant* used to make it short.

XXXV. *N longum est*, *n* is long at the end of a word, *Græcis pariter* both in Greek, *pariterque Latinis* and Latin

¹ The student should carefully observe that these Rules relative to final consonants refer more particularly to the vowels before the final consonants, than to the final consonants themselves.

words. *En brevia* make short *en* at the end of a word, *quod format* which makes, *inis breve* the penultima of *inis* short in the Genitive Case; *jungimus* we join to these, *Græca secunda*, Greek Nouns of the second Declension, *et quartum* and the Accusative Case of Greek Nouns, *si* if, *ultima* the last syllable, *recti* of the Nominative Case, *sit brevis* be short. *Adjice curtis*, add to short terminations, *n* in *forsitan*, *in*, *forsan*, *tamen*, *an*, *viden*.

XXXVI. *R breve*, *r* in the end of a word is short; *sed* but, *r* in *fur*, *par*, *cum* with, *pignore*, *lar*, *nar*, *cur*, *far*, *longum* *est* is long, *cum Græcis* together with the final *r* in Greek words, *queis patrius eris*, whose Genitive Case ending in *eris* has the penultima long; *et* and, so is the *r* in *æther*, *aer*, *ver*, and *iber*, *mage cor breve*, *cor* should rather be short, *celtiber anceps*, *ber* in *celtiber* is doubtful.

XXXVII. *As produc* make long *as* in the end of a word; *tertia Græcorum* the Third Declension of Greek Nouns, *corripit* makes short, *quartum casum* the final syllable of the Accusative Case plural; *et rectum* and of the Nominative Singular, *si patrius* if the Genitive Case, *exit per adis* ends in *adis* with the penultima short.

XXXVIII. *Es dabitur longis*, *es* in the end of a word will be given to long terminations, *i. e.*, will be long; *sed* but, *tertia* the Third Declension, *breviat* makes short, *rectum* the final syllable of the Nominative Case, *cum* when, *penultima* the last syllable but one, *patrii* of the Genitive Case, *crescens* increasing, *brevis est* is short. *Hinc excipitur*, from this Rule is excepted *es* in *pes*, *paries*, *aries*, *que* and, *Ceres*. *Corripe et es de sum* make short also *es* the Second Person Singular of the Verb *sum*, *penes* the final syllable of the Preposition, *penes*, *et neutralia Græca*, and of all Greek Nouns of the Neuter Gender. *His* to these, *Græca* let Greek Nouns, *dent* add the terminations of, *quintum et rectum* the Vocative and Nominative Cases, *numeri secundi* of the plural number.

XXXIX. *Corripies is et ys* you shall make short *is* and *ys* at the end of a word; *Plurales excipe Casus*, except the termination of Plural Cases. *Glis*, *sis*, *vis*, *verbum ac nomen*. whether Verb or Noun, *que* and, *nolis*, *que* and, *velis* have *is* long. *Audis cum sociis* so has, *audis* and all Second Persons Singular of Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation; *et semper producito*, and always make long the terminations of these words, *quorum Genitivus*, in *inis*, *entis* *ve*, *aut itis*, *long-*

um, whose Genitive Case Singular ends in *inis*, or *entis*, or *itis*, having the penultima long.

XL. *Vult os produci* ; *os* in the end of a word will be long ; *Compos breviatur et impos*, *os* in *compos* and *impos* is made short, *osque ossis*, and so is *os* when it makes *ossis* in Genitive Case ; *Græcorum et neutra*, and all Greek Nouns of the Neuter Gender ; *junges* you shall join, *his* to these, *cuncta* all Greek Nouns ending in *os*, *addicta* if referred, *secundæ Ausonidum* to the Second Declension of Latin Nouns, *patriosque Pelasgos*, and all Greek Genitive Cases ending in *os*.

XLI. *Us breve ponatur* ; let *us* in the end of a word be short ; *produc monosyllaba* make long words of one syllable in *us*, *que* and, the termination of those words, *quæ* which, *increscunt* increase, *Casibus longis*, in long Cases, *i.e.*, which increase and have the increment long, *et Nomina quartæ*, and *us* the termination of Nouns of the Fourth Declension *exceptis recto et quinto* except the Nominative and Vocative Cases, *et* and the termination of those Nouns, *quibus patrius*, whose Genitive Case, *exit in untis* ends in *untis* ; *et conflata a ποῦς*, and the terminations of words derived from Ποῦς, *que* and, *Græca*, the terminations of Greek Nouns, *contracta* contracted, *in recto ac patrio*, in the Nominative and Genitive Case singular, *et* and, the termination of, *venerandum nomen Iesus* the adorable name of Jesus.

XLII. *Ausonii vates* the Latin poets, *secuti* having followed, *exempla Græcorum* the examples of the Greek poets, *nonnunquam extendunt* sometimes make long, *quædam monosyllaba* some words of one syllable, *correpta* which by the foregoing Rules should be short,

XLIII. *Syllaba ultima* the last syllable, *cujusvis carminis* of every kind of poetic line, *erit anceps* will be doubtful.

THE END.